

KOMATSU LTD  
Form 20-F  
June 28, 2013  
Table of Contents

**UNITED STATES**  
**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
**WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

**FORM 20-F**

(Mark One)

**REGISTRATION STATEMENT PURSUANT TO SECTION 12(b) OR (g) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

or

**ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**  
For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013

or

**TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**  
or

**SHELL COMPANY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**  
Date of event requiring this shell company report \_\_\_\_\_

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

COMMISSION FILE NUMBER: 1-7239

**KABUSHIKI KAISHA KOMATSU SEISAKUSHO**

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in its charter)

**KOMATSU LTD.**

(Translation of Registrant's name into English)

JAPAN

(Jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

2-3-6 Akasaka, Minato-ku, Tokyo 107-8414, Japan

(Address of principal executive offices)

Masahiko Kanagawa or Tomonori Koga

Telephone: +81-3-5561-2604

Facsimile: +81-3-3586-0374

Address: 2-3-6 Akasaka, Minato-ku, Tokyo 107-8414, Japan

(Name, Telephone, E-mail and/or Facsimile number and Address of Company Contact Person)

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act.

Title of each class	Name of each exchange on which registered
None	N/A
Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act.	

None

(Title of Class)

Securities for which there is a reporting obligation pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Act.

Common Stock\*

(Title of Class)

\* 23,145,522 American Depositary Shares evidenced by American Depositary Receipts, each American Depositary Share representing 1 share of Common Stock of Komatsu Ltd.

Indicate the number of outstanding shares of each of the issuer's classes of capital or common stock as of the close of the period covered by the annual report.

952,778,859 shares (excluding 30,351,401 shares of Treasury Stock)

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes  No

If this report is an annual or transition report, indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, or a non-accelerated filer. See definition of accelerated filer and large accelerated filer in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer  Accelerated filer  Non-accelerated filer

Indicate by check mark which basis of accounting the registrant has used to prepare the financial statements included in this filing:

U.S. GAAP  International Financial Reporting Standards as issued  Other

by the International Accounting Standards Board

If Other has been checked in response to the previous question, indicate by check mark which financial statement item the registrant has elected to follow.

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Item 17 " Item 18 "

If this is an annual report, indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes " No x

**Table of Contents**

In this document, KOMATSU LTD. is hereinafter referred to as the Company, and together with its consolidated subsidiaries as Komatsu.

Cautionary Statement with respect to forward-looking statements:

This annual report contains forward-looking statements that reflect management's views and assumptions in the light of information currently available with respect to certain future events, including expected financial position, operating results and business strategies. These statements can be identified by the use of terms such as will, believes, should, projects, plans, expects and similar terms and expressions that identify events or expectations. Actual results may differ materially from those projected, and the events and results of such forward-looking assumptions cannot be assured. Any forward-looking statements speak only as of the date of this annual report, and the Company assumes no duty to update such statements.

Factors that may cause actual results to differ materially from those predicted by such forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, unanticipated changes in demand for Komatsu's principal products, owing to changes in the economic conditions in Komatsu's principal markets; changes in exchange rates or the impact of increased competition; unanticipated costs or delays encountered in achieving Komatsu's objectives with respect to globalized product sourcing and new information technology tools; uncertainties as to the results of Komatsu's research and development efforts and its ability to access and protect certain intellectual property rights; the impact of regulatory changes and accounting principles and practices; and the introduction, success and timing of business initiatives and strategies.

**Table of Contents****Table of Contents****PART I**

<u>Item 1. Identity of Directors, Senior Management and Advisers</u>	1
<u>Item 2. Offer Statistics and Expected Timetable</u>	1
<u>Item 3. Key Information</u>	1
<u>A. Selected Financial Data</u>	1
<u>B. Capitalization and Indebtedness</u>	3
<u>C. Reasons for the Offer and Use of Proceeds</u>	3
<u>D. Risk Factors</u>	3
<u>Item 4. Information on the Company</u>	6
<u>A. History and Development of the Company</u>	6
<u>B. Business Overview</u>	8
<u>C. Organizational Structure</u>	20
<u>D. Property, Plants and Equipment</u>	21
<u>Item 4A. Unresolved Staff Comments</u>	23
<u>Item 5. Operating and Financial Review and Prospects</u>	24
<u>A. Operating Results</u>	24
<u>B. Liquidity and Capital Resources</u>	43
<u>C. Research and Development, Patents and Licenses, etc.</u>	47
<u>D. Trend Information</u>	48
<u>E. Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements</u>	49
<u>F. Tabular Disclosure of Contractual Obligations</u>	50
<u>G. Safe Harbor</u>	50
<u>Item 6. Directors, Senior Management and Employees</u>	51
<u>A. Directors and Senior Management</u>	51
<u>B. Compensation</u>	63
<u>C. Board Practices</u>	66
<u>D. Employees</u>	67
<u>E. Share ownership</u>	68
<u>Item 7. Major Shareholders and Related Party Transactions</u>	69
<u>A. Major Shareholders</u>	69
<u>B. Related Party Transactions</u>	70
<u>C. Interests of Experts and Counsel</u>	70
<u>Item 8. Financial Information</u>	71
<u>A. Consolidated Statements and Other Financial Information</u>	71



**Table of Contents**

<u>Item 9. The Offer and Listing</u>	72
<u>A. Offer and Listing Details</u>	72
<u>B. Plan of Distribution</u>	74
<u>C. Markets</u>	74
<u>D. Selling Shareholders</u>	74
<u>E. Dilution</u>	74
<u>F. Expenses of the Issue</u>	74
<u>Item 10. Additional Information</u>	75
<u>A. Share Capital</u>	75
<u>B. Memorandum and Articles of Association</u>	75
<u>C. Material Contracts</u>	82
<u>D. Exchange Controls</u>	82
<u>E. Taxation</u>	84
<u>F. Dividends and Paying Agents</u>	88
<u>G. Statement by Experts</u>	88
<u>H. Documents on Display</u>	88
<u>I. Subsidiary Information</u>	88
<u>Item 11. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</u>	89
<u>Item 12. Description of Securities Other than Equity Securities</u>	91
<u>A. Debt Securities</u>	91
<u>B. Warrants and Rights</u>	91
<u>C. Other Securities</u>	91
<u>D. American Depositary Shares</u>	91
<b><u>PART II</u></b>	
<u>Item 13. Defaults, Dividend Arrearages and Delinquencies</u>	92
<u>Item 14. Material Modifications to the Rights of Security Holders and Use of Proceeds</u>	92
<u>Item 15. Controls and Procedures</u>	92
<u>Item 16. [Reserved]</u>	93
<u>A. Audit Committee Financial Experts</u>	93
<u>B. Code of Ethics</u>	93
<u>C. Principal Accountant Fees and Services</u>	94
<u>D. Exemptions from the Listing Standards for Audit Committees</u>	95
<u>E. Purchases of Equity Securities by the Issuer and Affiliated Purchasers</u>	95
<u>F. Change in Registrant's Certifying Accountant</u>	95
<u>G. Corporate Governance</u>	95
<u>H. Mine Safety Disclosure</u>	95
<b><u>PART III</u></b>	
<u>Item 17. Financial Statements</u>	96
<u>Item 18. Financial Statements</u>	96
<u>Item 19. Exhibits</u>	96



**Table of Contents**

Exhibit 1.1  
Exhibit 1.2  
Exhibit 2  
Exhibit 11  
Exhibit 12a  
Exhibit 12b  
Exhibit 13a  
Exhibit 13b

**Table of Contents****PART I****Item 1. Identity of Directors, Senior Management and Advisers**

Not applicable.

**Item 2. Offer Statistics and Expected Timetable**

Not applicable.

**Item 3. Key Information****A. Selected Financial Data**

The following selected financial data for each of the fiscal years ended March 31, 2009 through March 31, 2013 have been derived from the Company's audited consolidated financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles ( U.S. GAAP ). It should be read in conjunction with the Company's audited consolidated balance sheets as of March 31, 2012 and 2013, the related consolidated statements of income and consolidated statements of comprehensive income, shareholders' equity and cash flows for the three fiscal years ended March 31, 2013 and the notes thereto that appear elsewhere in this annual report.

**Selected Financial Data**

	Millions of yen, except per share amounts				
	2013	2012	2011	2010	2009
<b>Income Statement Data:</b>					
Net sales	1,884,991	1,981,763	1,843,127	1,431,564	2,021,743
Operating income	211,602	256,343	222,929	67,035	151,948
Income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies	204,603	249,609	219,809	64,979	128,782
Income taxes	69,089	74,470	64,706	25,364	42,293
Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd.	126,321	167,041	150,752	33,559	78,797
<b>Per Share Data:</b>					
Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd.					
- Basic	132.64	173.47	155.77	34.67	79.95
- Diluted	132.51	173.32	155.66	34.65	79.89
Cash dividends					
Yen	45.00	41.00	26.00	26.00	44.00
U.S. dollar 1)	0.48	0.50	0.31	0.28	0.44
<b>Depreciation and amortization</b>	89,322	90,106	89,467	91,319	98,354
<b>Capital Investment 2)</b>	136,962	122,038	97,738	96,191	162,512
<b>Research and development expenses</b>	60,788	54,843	49,005	46,449	53,736

	Millions of yen				
<b>Balance Sheet Data:</b>					
Total assets	2,517,857	2,320,529	2,149,137	1,959,055	1,969,059
Komatsu Ltd. shareholders' equity	1,193,194	1,009,696	923,843	833,975	814,941
Capital stock	67,870	67,870	67,870	67,870	67,870
Number of shares issued at year-end	983,130,260	983,130,260	998,744,060	998,744,060	998,744,060
Number of shares outstanding at year-end	952,778,859	952,261,022	967,902,641	968,039,976	967,822,292



**Table of Contents**

## Notes:

- 1) The conversion rate between the Japanese yen to the U.S. dollar is ¥94.34 to U.S.\$1.00, the buying rate of Japanese yen as of noon on June 14, 2013 in The City of New York as reported by the Federal Reserve Board.
- 2) The term "Capital Investment" as used in the above Selected Financial Data should be distinguished from the term "Capital Expenditures" as used in the consolidated statements of cash flows. The term "Capital Investment" as used in the above Selected Financial Data is defined to refer to costs relating to the purchase of property, plant and equipment including properties under capital leases on an accrual basis which reflect the effect of timing differences between acquisition dates and payment dates. Komatsu's management uses this financial indicator to manage its capital investment and believes that this indicator is useful to investors in that this indicator presents accrual based capital investment in addition to the cash based capital expenditures provided in the consolidated statements of cash flows.

The following table provides the noon buying rates for Japanese yen in The City of New York as reported by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York and the Federal Reserve Board expressed in Japanese yen per U.S. dollar for the periods indicated. The average Japanese yen exchange rates represent average noon buying rates on the last business day of each month for the respective period. On June 14, 2013, the noon buying rate in The City of New York as reported by the Federal Reserve Board for Japanese yen was ¥94.34 = U.S.\$1.00.

**Yen Exchange Rates per U.S. dollar:**

(Yen)

	Average	High	Low	Period-End
<b>Year ended March 31</b>				
2009	100.85	87.80	110.48	99.15
2010	92.49	86.12	100.71	93.40
2011	85.00	78.74	94.68	82.76
2012	78.86	75.72	85.26	82.41
2013	83.26	77.41	96.16	94.16
<b>2012</b>				
		High	Low	Period-End
December		81.86	86.64	86.64
<b>2013</b>				
January		86.92	91.28	91.28
February		91.38	93.64	92.36
March		93.32	96.16	94.16
April		92.96	99.61	97.52
May		97.28	103.52	100.83

---

**Table of Contents**

**B. Capitalization and Indebtedness**

Not applicable.

**C. Reasons for the Offer and Use of Proceeds**

Not applicable.

**D. Risk Factors**

Given that Komatsu operates on a global scale with development, production, sales and other bases established around the world, Komatsu is exposed to a variety of risks. Komatsu has identified the following risks as its primary risks based on information currently available to it. The statements set forth in this section should be considered carefully in conjunction with Item 5. Operating and Financial Review and Prospects and the Consolidated Financial Statements that appear elsewhere in this annual report on Form 20-F. The risks discussed below are risks that may, individually or in the aggregate, make Komatsu's actual results differ materially from its expected or past results. It should be noted, however, that it is impossible to predict or identify all risks that may be applicable to Komatsu. The below list of risks should not be considered to be a complete list of risks that could materially affect Komatsu's results of operations and/or financial condition. Komatsu's results of operations and/or financial condition may also be affected in the future by other risks that are currently unknown or that are not currently considered significant or material.

**(1) Economic and market conditions**

The business environment in which Komatsu operates and the market demand for its products may change substantially as a result of economic and market conditions, which differ from region to region.

In economically developed countries in which Komatsu operates, Komatsu's business is generally affected by cyclical changes in the economies of such regions. Therefore, factors which are beyond Komatsu's control, such as levels of housing starts, industrial production, public investments in infrastructure development and private-sector capital outlays, may affect demand for Komatsu's products.

In newly developing countries in which Komatsu operates, Komatsu constantly pays careful attention to the changes in demand for its products. However, these economies are impacted by a number of unstable factors, such as commodity prices and considerable reliance on exports to economically developed regions and thus, changes in these factors could adversely affect Komatsu's business results.

Furthermore, when economic and/or market conditions change more drastically than forecasted, Komatsu may also experience, among other things, fewer orders of its products, an increase in cancellation of orders by customers and a delay in the collection of receivables.

These changes in the economic and market conditions and the business environment in which Komatsu operates may lead to a decline in sales, and inefficient inventory levels and/or production capacities, thereby causing Komatsu to record lower profitability and incur additional expenses and losses. As a result, Komatsu's results of operations may be adversely affected.

**(2) Foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations**

A substantial portion of Komatsu's overseas sales is affected by foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations. In general, an appreciation of the Japanese yen against another currency would adversely affect Komatsu's results of operations, while a depreciation of the Japanese yen against another currency would have a favorable impact thereon. In addition, foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations may also affect the comparative prices between products sold by Komatsu and products sold by its foreign competitors in the same market, as well as the cost of materials used in the production of such products. Komatsu strives to alleviate the effect of such foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations by locating its production bases globally and engaging in production locally. Komatsu also engages in hedging activities to minimize the effects of short-term foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations. Despite Komatsu's efforts, if the foreign currency exchange rates fluctuate beyond Komatsu's projected fluctuation range, Komatsu's results of operations may be adversely affected.

## **Table of Contents**

### **(3) Fluctuations in financial markets**

While Komatsu is currently working to improve the efficiency of its assets by reducing its interest-bearing debt, its aggregate short- and long-term interest-bearing debt was approximately ¥680 billion as of March 31, 2013. Although Komatsu has strived to reduce the effect of interest rate fluctuations using various measures, including procuring funds at fixed interest rates, an increase in interest rates may increase Komatsu's interest expenses and thereby adversely affect Komatsu's results of operations. In addition, fluctuations in the financial markets, such as fluctuations in the fair value of marketable securities and interest rates, may also increase the unfunded obligation portion of Komatsu's pension plans or pension liabilities, which may result in an increase in pension expenses. Such an increase in interest expenses and pension expenses may adversely affect Komatsu's results of operations and financial condition.

### **(4) Laws and regulations of different countries**

Komatsu is subject to governmental regulations and approval procedures in the countries in which it operates. If the government of a given country were to introduce new laws and regulations or revise existing laws and regulations relating to customs duties, currency restrictions and other legal requirements, Komatsu may incur expenses in order to comply with such laws and regulations or its development, production, sales and service operations may be affected adversely by them. With respect to transfer pricing between Komatsu and its affiliated companies, Komatsu is careful to comply with applicable taxation laws of Japan and the concerned foreign governments. Nevertheless, it is possible that Komatsu may be viewed by the concerned tax authorities as having used inappropriate pricing. Furthermore, if intergovernmental negotiations were to fail, Komatsu may be charged with double or additional taxation. When facing such an unexpected situation, Komatsu may experience an unfavorable impact on its business results.

### **(5) Environmental laws and regulations**

Komatsu's products and business operations are required to meet increasingly stringent environmental laws and regulations in the numerous countries in which Komatsu operates. To this end, Komatsu expends a significant share of its management resources, such as research and development expenses, to comply with environmental and other related regulations. If Komatsu is required to incur additional expenses and make additional capital investments due to revised environmental regulations adopted in the future, or if its development, production, sales and service operations are adversely affected by such revised regulations, Komatsu may experience an unfavorable impact on its business results.

### **(6) Product and quality liability**

While Komatsu endeavors to sustain and improve the quality and reliability of its operations and products based on stringent standards established internally, Komatsu may face product and quality liability claims or become exposed to other liabilities if unexpected defects in its products result in recalls or accidents. If the costs for addressing such claims or other liabilities are not covered by Komatsu's existing insurance policies or other protective means, such claims may adversely affect its financial condition.

### **(7) Alliances and collaborative relationships**

Komatsu has entered into various alliances and collaborative relationships with distributors, suppliers and other companies in its industry to reinforce its international competitiveness. Through such arrangements, Komatsu is working to improve its product development, production, sales and service capabilities. While Komatsu expects its alliances and collaborative relationships to be successful, Komatsu's failure to attain expected results or the termination of such alliances or collaborative relationships may adversely affect Komatsu's results of operations.

---

**Table of Contents**

**(8) Procurement, production and other matters**

Komatsu's procurement of parts and materials for its products is exposed to fluctuations in commodity and energy prices. Price increases in commodities, such as steel materials, as well as energies, such as crude oil and electricity, may increase the production cost of Komatsu's products. In addition, a shortage of product parts and materials, bankruptcies of suppliers or production discontinuation by suppliers of products used by Komatsu may make it difficult for Komatsu to engage in the timely procurement of parts and materials and manufacture of its products, thereby lowering Komatsu's production efficiency. With respect to an increase in the cost of production as mainly affected by an increase in the cost of materials, Komatsu mainly strives to reduce other costs and make price adjustments of its products. Komatsu also strives to minimize the effects of possible procurement or manufacturing issues by securing new suppliers or promoting closer collaboration among its related business divisions. However, if the increase in commodity and energy prices were to exceed Komatsu's expectations or a prolonged shortage of materials and parts were to occur, Komatsu's results of operations may be adversely affected.

**(9) Information security, intellectual property and other matters**

Komatsu may obtain confidential information concerning its customers and individuals in the normal course of its business. Komatsu also holds confidential business and technological information. Komatsu safeguards such confidential information with the utmost care. To forestall unauthorized access by means of cyber-attacks, tampering, destruction, leakage and losses, Komatsu employs appropriate safety measures, including implementing technological safety measures and strengthening its information management capabilities. However, when its network and information systems crash and/or problems, such as a leak of confidential information concerning customers and individuals, occur, Komatsu may become liable for damages, or its reputation or its customers' confidence in Komatsu may be adversely affected. In addition, if Komatsu's confidential business and technological information were leaked or misused by a third party, or Komatsu's intellectual properties were infringed upon by a third party, or Komatsu were held liable for infringing on a third party's intellectual property rights, Komatsu's business results may be adversely affected.

**(10) Natural calamities, wars, terrorism, accidents and other matters**

If natural disasters (such as earthquakes, tsunamis and floods), epidemics, radioactive contamination, wars, terrorist acts, riots, accidents (such as fires and explosions), unforeseeable criticism or interference by third parties or computer virus infections were to occur in the regions in which Komatsu operates, Komatsu may incur extensive damage to one or more of its facilities that then could not become fully operational within a short period of time. Even if Komatsu's operations were not directly harmed by such events, confusion in logistic and supply networks, shortages in the supply of electric power, gas and other utilities, telecommunication problems and/or problems of supplier's production may continue for a long period of time. Accordingly, if delays or disruption in the procurement of materials and parts, or the production and sales of Komatsu's products and services, or deterioration of the capital-raising environment or other adverse developments were to take place as a result of such events, Komatsu's business results may be adversely affected.

---

## **Table of Contents**

### **Item 4. Information on the Company**

#### **A. History and Development of the Company**

The Company was incorporated in May 1921 as a joint stock corporation (kabushiki kaisha) in accordance with Japanese law under the name Kabushiki Kaisha Komatsu Seisakusho ( Komatsu Ltd. in English). Its registered office is located at 2-3-6 Akasaka, Minato-ku, Tokyo 107-8414, Japan, and its telephone number is +81-3-5561-2604 (Corporate Controlling Department).

Shortly after its formation in 1921, the Company commenced the production and marketing of sheet-forming presses. In 1931, the Company produced Japan's first crawler-type farm tractor and in the 1940s the Company began its production of bulldozers in Japan. The Company broadened its product line-up by beginning production of motor graders and dump trucks in the 1950s and wheel loaders and hydraulic excavators in the 1960s.

The history and development of Komatsu's global operations can be divided into three phases: (1) exports from Japan, (2) offshore production and (3) management of its global production and distribution network.

Since its first export to Argentina in 1955, Komatsu has gradually increased exports of its products. Komatsu established its first liaison office in India in 1964 and established sales companies in Europe, the United States and Asia between 1967 and 1971.

During the 1970s and 1980s, Komatsu started establishing its production facilities offshore and enhanced its offshore production by locating manufacturing plants close to their respective markets. In 1975, Komatsu commenced offshore production with the production of bulldozers in Brazil by Komatsu do Brasil Ltda., its first manufacturing plant outside Japan. Subsequently, Komatsu increased its global presence by establishing manufacturing plants in Indonesia, the United Kingdom and the United States during the 1980s. For example, during the 1980s, Komatsu established a joint venture company in the United States with Dresser Industries Inc. named Komatsu Dresser Company (now known as Komatsu America Corp., KAC ).

During the 1990s, Komatsu strengthened its overseas manufacturing capabilities and made efforts to optimize its production and distribution network on a global basis through various methods, including forming alliances and entering into joint ventures. For instance, Komatsu established Komatsu Cummins Engine Co., Ltd. and Industrial Power Alliance Ltd. in Japan and Cummins Komatsu Engine Company in the United States, with Cummins Engine Company (now known as Cummins Inc.). In addition, Komatsu entered into three joint ventures in China, and a joint venture with Mannesmann Demag of Germany to establish Demag Komatsu GmbH (now known as Komatsu Mining Germany GmbH).

The following are some of the significant transactions in the development of Komatsu's business in recent years.

In January 2007, the Company signed a definitive agreement to sell the OPE business of Komatsu Zenoah Co. to a Japanese subsidiary of Husqvarna AB of Sweden. After Komatsu Zenoah Co. split its OPE business and established Zenoah Co., Komatsu Zenoah Co. was merged into Komatsu Utility Co., Ltd. in April 2007, as a result of which Komatsu Utility Co., Ltd. became Zenoah Co.'s parent company. In the same month, Komatsu Utility Co., Ltd. sold all of its shares of Zenoah Co. to HUSQVARNA JAPAN LTD. (now known as Husqvarna Zenoah Co., Ltd.), thereby completing the sale of the OPE business.

In January 2008, to generate more synergy, the Company launched a takeover bid to obtain all issued shares of NIPPEI TOYAMA, which resulted in the Company owning 93.7% of the equity interest of such entity.

In August 2008, the Company and NIPPEI TOYAMA implemented a share exchange and NIPPEI TOYAMA became a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company. In October 2008, NIPPEI TOYAMA changed its name and is now known as Komatsu NTC Ltd.

In April 2009, Komatsu Tokyo Ltd. ( Komatsu Tokyo ), a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company, merged with 11 other consolidated subsidiaries of the Company, consisting of 10 sales subsidiaries and Komatsu All Parts Support Ltd., through an absorption-type merger. In the same month, the Company transferred its sales and service business for construction equipment (excluding underground construction equipment) in Japan to Komatsu Tokyo through an absorption-type company split. Upon the completion of these transactions, Komatsu Tokyo changed its name and is now known as Komatsu Construction Equipment Sales and Service Japan Ltd.

In April 2010, Komatsu Industries Corporation ( Komatsu Industries ), a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company, took over the product development and sales and service operations of the large-sized press business, previously conducted by the Company's Industrial Machinery Division, by way of an absorption-type corporate split.



## Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

In April 2011, the Company merged with Komatsu Utility Co., Ltd. in an absorption-type merger. Komatsu Utility Co., Ltd. was a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company that produced and sold forklift trucks and mini construction equipment.

**Table of Contents****PRINCIPAL CAPITAL INVESTMENT**

Komatsu invests capital each year in the development and production of new products and the improvement of the operating efficiency of its production infrastructure, primarily focusing on the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment. Komatsu's capital investment for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 were ¥136,962 million, ¥122,038 million and ¥97,738 million, respectively. Capital investment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 by operating segment was as follows.

**Capital Investment by Operating Segment**

	Millions of Yen	Percentage Change as compared to the
	Fiscal Year ended March 31, 2013	Fiscal Year ended March 31, 2012
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	¥ 127,706	10.6%
Industrial Machinery and Others	9,256	42.0%
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 136,962</b>	<b>12.2%</b>

Notes:

- 1) Amounts include certain leased machinery and equipment accounted for as capital leases in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification 840.
- 2) The term "Capital Investment" as used in the above table should be distinguished from the term "Capital Expenditures" as used in the consolidated statements of cash flows. The term "Capital Investment" as used in the above table is defined to refer to costs relating to the purchase of property, plant and equipment including properties under capital leases on an accrual basis which reflect the effect of timing differences between acquisition dates and payment dates. Komatsu's management uses this financial indicator to manage its capital investment and believes that this indicator is useful to investors in that this indicator presents accrual based capital investment in addition to the cash based capital expenditures provided in the consolidated statements of cash flows.

In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, Komatsu made capital investments in the construction, mining and utility equipment business to expand its production capacity in light of an expected increase in future demand for its equipment, and to strengthen its sales and service operations in the Strategic Markets (see below for a further description of "Strategic Markets"). For example, Komatsu expanded production capacities of Komatsu (Shandong) Construction Machinery Corp. in anticipation of mid- to long-range market growth. In the industrial machinery and others business, Komatsu made capital investments to renovate its facilities.

Komatsu considers the markets in Japan, North America and Europe to be its "Traditional Markets" and the markets in China, Latin America, Asia, Oceania, Africa, the Middle East and the Commonwealth of Independent States ( "CIS") as its "Strategic Markets".

The following table sets forth in further detail the principal construction projects Komatsu undertook during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013.

**Main facilities completed in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013**

Operating segment	Main facilities
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	Komatsu (Shandong) Construction Machinery Corp.: Expansion of plant

## Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Products: Hydraulic excavator, hydraulic equipment, cast steel material, final drive, etc.

Location: Jining, Shandong, China

Komatsu's capital investments for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 were primarily financed by funds on hand and bank borrowings.

For information on Komatsu's expected principal capital investments for the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014, see Item 4.D. Property, Plants and Equipment.

**Table of Contents****B. Business Overview**

## GENERAL

Komatsu is a global company that engages in the manufacturing, development, marketing and sale of a diversified range of industrial-use products and services. With Quality and Reliability as the cornerstone of its management policy, Komatsu is committed to providing safe and innovative products and services that satisfy its customers' needs and expectations.

The manufacturing operations of Komatsu are conducted primarily at plants located in Japan, the United States, Brazil, the United Kingdom, Germany, Sweden, Italy, Indonesia, China, Thailand, India and Russia. Komatsu's products are primarily sold under the Komatsu brand name and almost all of its sales and service activities are conducted through its sales subsidiaries, affiliates and independent distributors who primarily sell products to retail dealers in their respective geographic area.

## PRODUCTS AND SERVICES

The following table sets forth Komatsu's net sales by operating segments for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, which is derived from the Company's audited consolidated financial statements.

**Net Sales by Operating Segments**

	(Millions of Yen)					
	Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2013		Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2012		Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2011	
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	¥ 1,677,049	89.0%	¥ 1,739,348	87.8%	¥ 1,615,689	87.7%
Industrial Machinery and Others	207,942	11.0%	242,415	12.2%	227,438	12.3%
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 1,884,991</b>	<b>100.0%</b>	<b>¥ 1,981,763</b>	<b>100.0%</b>	<b>¥ 1,843,127</b>	<b>100.0%</b>

## (1) Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment

The Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment has been Komatsu's mainstay operating segment during the last several decades. Net sales from this operating segment accounted for 89.0% of Komatsu's total net sales for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013.

Komatsu offers various types of construction, mining and utility equipment, ranging from super-large machines capable of mining applications to general construction equipment and mini construction equipment for urban use. Komatsu's range of products in this operating segment also includes a wide variety of attachments to be used with its products. Komatsu's principal products in this operating segment fall into the following categories:

<b>Category</b>	<b>Principal Products and Businesses</b>
Excavating Equipment	Hydraulic excavators, mini excavators and backhoe loaders
Loading Equipment	Wheel loaders, mini wheel loaders and skid steer loaders
Grading and Roadbed Preparation Equipment	Bulldozers, motor graders and vibratory rollers
Hauling Equipment	Off-highway dump trucks, articulated dump trucks and crawler carriers
Forestry Equipment	Harvesters, forwarders and feller-bunchers
Tunneling Machines	Shield machines, tunnel-boring machines and small-diameter pipe jacking machines

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Recycling Equipment	Mobile crushers, mobile soil recyclers and mobile tub grinders
Industrial Vehicles	Forklift trucks
Other Equipment	Railroad maintenance equipment
Engines and Components	Diesel engines, diesel generator sets and hydraulic equipment
Casting Products	Steel castings and iron castings
Logistics	Packing, warehousing and transport

**Table of Contents**

To remain competitive in this operating segment, Komatsu introduced the DANTOTSU Strategy in 2003 and has been working to increase the number of DANTOTSU products. DANTOTSU means unique and unrivaled in Japanese. Komatsu only designates a product as DANTOTSU if such product is considered unique and unrivaled as compared to those produced by Komatsu's competitors, due to the fact that such product is equipped with one or more features that its competitors cannot match for some time. Since the introduction of DANTOTSU products, Komatsu has been working to replace many of its product models with DANTOTSU products. Komatsu plans to continue making model changes to replace some of its existing construction, mining and utility equipment product models with DANTOTSU products.

In addition to manufacturing and developing new products, Komatsu has been focused on downstream businesses, such as the used equipment business and the equipment rental business. Komatsu Used Equipment Corp. has been facilitating the sale of used equipment by holding annual auctions in several locations in Japan since the mid-1990s.

The principal products developed and introduced to the market in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 are listed below:

Company	Product	Model
Komatsu Ltd.	Hydraulic Excavators	PC128US-10, PC138US-10, PC200-10, PC200-8M0, PC220-8M0, PC300-8M0, HB205-1M0, PC4000-6
	Wheeled Hydraulic Excavators	PW160-8, PW180-10
	Bulldozers	D37-22, D39-22, D61EX/PX-23, D61EXi/PXi-23
	Wheel Loaders	WA270-7, WA320-7, WA470-7
	Dump Trucks	HM400-3M0/3R
	Motor Graders	GD755-5R
	Forklifts Trucks	FH40-1, FH45-1, FH50-1

**(2) Industrial Machinery and Others**

Net sales from the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment accounted for 11.0% of Komatsu's total net sales for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. The products available in this operating segment are used by a wide range of businesses and include industrial machinery, such as forging and sheet metal machinery and other services. Komatsu's principal products in this operating segment fall into the following categories:

Category	Principal Products and Businesses
Metal Forging and Stamping Presses	Large presses, servo presses, small- and medium-sized presses and forging presses
Sheet-Metal Machines	Laser cutting machines, fine-plasma cutting machines, press brakes and shears
Machine Tools	Transfer machines, machining centers, crankshaft millers, grinding machines and wire saws
Defense Systems	Ammunition and armored personnel carriers
Temperature-control equipment	Thermoelectric modules and temperature-control equipment for semiconductor manufacturing
Others	Commercial-use prefabricated structures and excimer laser for lithography tools in semiconductor manufacturing

**Table of Contents**

The principal products developed and introduced to the market in the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 are listed below:

Company	Product	Model
Komatsu Industries Corporation	Small- and medium-sized presses	H2F1200, H2F600, H1F110-2
	Press brakes	PVS8525
Komatsu NTC Ltd.	Machining centers	NTG-4SP
	Wire saws	PV500HD

**PRINCIPAL MARKETS**

Komatsu operates and competes in the following six principal markets: (1) Japan, (2) the Americas, (3) Europe and CIS, (4) China, (5) Asia (excluding Japan and China) and Oceania and (6) the Middle East and Africa.

In this annual report, information regarding net sales by geographic segment is presented in the following two ways: (1) by customer location (based on the country where the purchaser is located) and (2) by sales origin (based on the country where the seller is located). The following table sets forth Komatsu's net sales recognized by customer location for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011. Net sales data by sales origin are set forth in Item 5.A. Operating and Financial Review and Prospectus as well as Note 22 to the Company's audited consolidated financial statements, included elsewhere in this report.

	(Millions of Yen)					
	Fiscal Year		Fiscal Year		Fiscal Year	
	Ended March 31, 2013		Ended March 31, 2012		Ended March 31, 2011	
Japan	¥ 380,024	20.2%	¥ 402,505	20.3%	¥ 349,184	18.9%
The Americas	561,962	29.8%	460,814	23.3%	397,427	21.6%
Europe and CIS	203,878	10.8%	207,848	10.5%	165,418	9.0%
China	156,030	8.3%	270,017	13.6%	428,208	23.2%
Asia (excluding Japan and China) and Oceania	454,394	24.1%	513,575	25.9%	398,366	21.6%
Middle East and Africa	128,703	6.8%	127,004	6.4%	104,524	5.7%
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 1,884,991</b>	<b>100.0%</b>	<b>¥ 1,981,763</b>	<b>100.0%</b>	<b>¥ 1,843,127</b>	<b>100.0%</b>

**SALES AND DISTRIBUTION**

Komatsu's international and domestic sales and distribution for its Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment are conducted primarily through a network of subsidiaries, affiliates and independent distributors. Except as noted below where Komatsu's subsidiaries sell their products directly to customers, construction, mining and utility equipment is typically sold through independent distributors, who purchase such equipment from the Company and its subsidiaries that manufacture such equipment.

Komatsu's construction, mining and utility equipment sales and distribution operations in Japan focus principally on retail sales to customers, partly on an installment basis, and are undertaken by independent distributors, and Komatsu's subsidiaries and affiliates who purchase such equipment from the Company. In addition, Komatsu has enhanced its equipment rental services business in Japan, especially for its construction and utility equipment, in response to strong demand from customers. Komatsu's subsidiaries and independent distributors form Komatsu's service network in Japan, providing total customer-support services.

---

## **Table of Contents**

Komatsu's overseas construction, mining and utility equipment sales and service network is a global network and covers almost all parts of the world. With the exception of certain areas, Komatsu sells its products to customers through independent distributors around the world who typically purchase such equipment from the Company and its subsidiaries. With respect to mining equipment, in the areas where there is high demand, such as Australia, Chile and South Africa, there are situations when Komatsu's subsidiaries in such areas provide sales and services directly to customers. Komatsu's liaison offices provide both sales support and technical support to independent distributors. The Company's major sales subsidiaries and affiliates are located in the United States, Brazil, Belgium, Russia, China, Indonesia, and the United Arab Emirates. These subsidiaries and affiliates provide technical assistance to the independent distributors and carry spare parts so that such parts can be delivered on a timely basis to its customers and distributors. These subsidiaries and affiliates as well as independent distributors provide the services that customers may require with respect to their construction, mining and utility equipment outside of Japan.

In addition, Komatsu provides its customers with financing for their purchases of construction, mining and utility equipment through its retail finance subsidiaries and an affiliated company in its major markets of Japan, the United States, Chile, Europe, Thailand, Indonesia, Australia and China. Komatsu's retail finance companies in each major market are providing various types of financing menus, such as installment sales and leases, in response to customer's needs.

Komatsu's sales of products in the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment include direct sales to customers and sales through independent distributors and unaffiliated trading companies. For example, large presses are mainly sold directly to customers while small- and medium-sized presses are primarily sold through independent distributors.

### **SOURCES OF SUPPLY**

As it is neither economical nor efficient for Komatsu to manufacture all of its necessary components and parts, Komatsu produces some of its major equipment components internally and purchases other components and parts, such as electrical components, tires, hoses and batteries, from specialized suppliers. Specialized suppliers are Komatsu's business partners that supply components and parts that are particularly important to maintaining the quality of Komatsu's products or business partners who specialize in supplying particular components and parts. Komatsu also procures some of its parts, such as metal forgings, machine components, sheet metal parts and various accessories, from other business partners. Therefore, the fluctuations in prices of materials for such components, such as steel materials, may affect Komatsu's results of operations. In addition, a shortage of product parts and materials, bankruptcies of suppliers or production discontinuation by suppliers of products used by Komatsu may make it difficult for Komatsu to engage in the timely procurement of parts and materials and manufacture of its products. Nevertheless, Komatsu believes that it has adequate and reliable sources of supply for its material components, parts and raw materials, and that it has appropriate alternative sources available for such supplies consistent with its prudent business practices.

### **SEASONALITY**

In general, Komatsu's businesses have historically experienced some seasonal fluctuations in sales. While there are variations by market and product, Komatsu's consolidated sales volume is customarily the highest during the fourth quarter. However, this seasonality has generally not been material to Komatsu's results of operations.

### **PATENTS AND LICENSES**

Komatsu holds numerous Japanese and foreign patents, design patents and utility model registrations relating to its products. It also has a number of applications pending for Japanese and foreign patents. Under Japanese law, a utility model registration is a right granted with respect to inventions of less originality than those which qualify for patents. Komatsu also manufactures a variety of products under licensing agreements with various other companies.

While Komatsu considers all of its patents and licenses to be important for the operation of its business, it does not consider any of its patents or licenses or any related group of them to be so important that its expiration or termination would materially affect Komatsu's business as a whole, nor does it believe that any category of its activities is materially dependent upon patents or licenses, or patent or license protection. Komatsu also owns and maintains a substantial number of trademarks and trade names that are registered or otherwise protected under the laws of various jurisdictions.



---

**Table of Contents**

COMPETITIVE ENVIRONMENT

*Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment*

As a manufacturer of a full line-up of construction and mining equipment, Komatsu provides a broad range of products from super-large equipment for mining use to general construction equipment and mini construction equipment for urban use.

While there is intense competition in all of the product categories in this operating segment, based on sales amount, Komatsu continues to be one of the market leaders in respect of construction and mining equipment in every geographic region in which it operates. In many countries in the Asian market, Komatsu is the market leader in respect of construction and mining equipment based on sales amount.

Komatsu's competitors in the construction and mining equipment business consist of global competitors, regional competitors and locally specialized competitors. Major global competitors include Caterpillar Inc. ( Caterpillar ), Hitachi Construction Machinery Co., Ltd. ( Hitachi Construction ), Volvo Construction Equipment N.V. ( Volvo ) and Liebherr Group ( Liebherr Group ). The competitive environment differs according to regions and product models.

North America is the largest market for construction equipment in the world and Caterpillar is the market leader based on sales. Deere & Company, which has formed an alliance with Hitachi Construction, also holds a strong market position in construction equipment in North America based on sales. With respect to mining equipment, Komatsu's main competitor in North America is Caterpillar, which has a full line-up of products.

In Europe, in addition to global manufacturers with a full line-up of construction equipment, such as Caterpillar, Volvo and Liebherr Group, there are many regional or locally specialized competitors who have firm footings in the local construction equipment markets. Komatsu competes with different competitors in each country or region in Europe and it is expected that the construction equipment markets in Europe will continue to be very competitive.

In Asia, Komatsu's competitors in the construction equipment market include Caterpillar, Hitachi Construction and Korean manufacturers, such as Hyundai Heavy Industries Co., Ltd. and Doosan Infracore Co., Ltd. In China, Komatsu competes with a number of locally specialized construction equipment manufacturers in addition to the above-mentioned competitors. With respect to mining equipment, Komatsu's main competitor in Asia (including China) is Caterpillar, a mining equipment manufacturer with a full line-up of products.

As for industrial vehicles, Komatsu competes with global competitors that offer a full line-up of forklift trucks, such as Toyota Industries Corporation ( Toyota ), as well as locally specialized manufacturers. The major markets for forklift trucks have traditionally been Europe, the United States and Japan. Recently, China has overtaken Europe and has developed into the largest market for forklift trucks. While European and U.S. manufacturers of forklift trucks sell not only forklift trucks but also warehousing equipment, Komatsu and other Japanese manufacturers (excluding Toyota) of forklift trucks primarily focus on forklift trucks. In China, Komatsu competes with a number of locally specialized manufacturers in addition to European, U.S., Korean and Japanese manufacturers.

Despite the competitive environment, Komatsu believes that the following strengths provide Komatsu with a competitive advantage in the global construction, mining and utility equipment market:

*DANTOTSU products*

DANTOTSU products are products that have truly outstanding features or qualities in terms of, among others, fuel efficiency, information and communication technology ( ICT ) and environmental features, such as lower CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and fuel consumption. Komatsu designates a product as a DANTOTSU product when it believes the product has features that its competitors will not be able to match for some time.

---

## Table of Contents

### KOMTRAX (Komatsu Machine Tracking System)

KOMTRAX is a system that Komatsu pioneered the development of and introduced to the market in 2001. Using KOMTRAX, customers can manage the operation of their construction equipment by utilizing information technology applications, such as a global positioning system ( GPS ) and mobile telecommunication technologies. Using the information collected through KOMTRAX, such as location and operation time, customers who operate equipment equipped with KOMTRAX are able to operate the equipment more efficiently and cost effectively because they are able to decrease fuel use and maintenance expenses. In addition, this system has enabled distributors to improve their parts and service operations, thereby improving the time required to respond to customers' service requests.

More recently, Komatsu has expanded the application of KOMTRAX and introduced KOMTRAX PLUS, which provides the means to monitor the health of major components on large machines, such as mining equipment. More specifically, KOMTRAX PLUS transmits machine data to Komatsu and service personnel such that effective preventative maintenance can be undertaken in advance, thereby reducing the customer's repair cost and minimizing unscheduled downtime of equipment.

### AHS (Autonomous Haulage System)

AHS is a system that controls the operation of super-large autonomous dump trucks that are used in large-scale mines. Komatsu first introduced AHS in copper mines in northern Chile, where it is currently in full use. Komatsu started to provide AHS for use in iron ore mines in Western Australia at the end of 2008 as its second installation. Komatsu is the only company that provides this type of system in the mining equipment industry.

### Hybrid

In June 2008, Komatsu launched the world's first hybrid hydraulic excavator that consumes less fuel and emits less carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>). Komatsu believes that it has a competitive advantage in the market with respect to this type of equipment not only because it was one of the first to develop and market this type of equipment but also because the equipment is equipped with advanced technologies that reduce CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and fuel consumption, which are features that customers have been focused on in recent years. As of March 31, 2013, Komatsu has introduced hybrid excavators in Japan, North, Central and South America, Europe, China, Southeast Asia and Oceania.

### Industrial Machinery and Others

In the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment, Komatsu's principal products include (1) metal forging and stamping presses, (2) sheet metal machines and (3) machine tools. As discussed below, the market for these products is highly competitive.

#### (1) Metal Forging and Stamping Presses

Komatsu manufactures and sells stamping presses that are used to press doors and roofs of automobiles and various other parts into shapes. Komatsu's stamping presses can be divided into large-sized presses, and medium- and small-sized presses. In 2012, as the world economy showed signs of improvement, capital investment by automotive manufacturers started to come back especially in the Asian markets, such as China and Thailand. As a result, demand for stamping presses has increased.

With respect to large-sized presses, which are mainly sold to automobile manufacturers, Komatsu considers IHI Corporation, Hitachi Zosen Fukui Corporation and AIDA Engineering, Ltd. ( AIDA ) of Japan and Schuler AG of Germany to be its major competitors. In Japan, Japanese manufacturers, including Komatsu, have an advantage over non-Japanese manufacturers. Likewise, in Germany, German manufacturers enjoy dominant positions and have a competitive advantage over non-German manufacturers. In other markets, regional and locally specialized competitors in addition to the above-mentioned major manufacturers compete with each other, making the market highly competitive. In light of such market conditions, Komatsu has standardized the models for large-sized AC servo presses in order to improve its production efficiency and increased the number of its service staff and offices to strengthen its global service force. Furthermore, local production of large-sized AC servo presses started in China, and sales promotion efforts were increased in emerging countries such as China and Brazil.

---

## **Table of Contents**

With respect to small- and medium-sized presses, Asia (including Japan) is Komatsu's largest market. Major competitors of Komatsu for these products include AIDA and Amada Co., Ltd. (Amada) of Japan, The Minster Machine Company of the United States and Chin Fong Machine Industrial Co., Ltd. of Taiwan. Komatsu's small-sized AC servo presses were fully redesigned in March 2013 and enhancements were made to their specification menu. Local production of small-sized AC servo presses started in China, and sales promotion efforts were strengthened in China.

### *(2) Sheet Metal Machines*

Komatsu's sheet metal machines business is primarily focused on machines that cut and bend steel sheets, and Japan is Komatsu's major market for such machines. Komatsu's competitors consist of other Japanese manufacturers, such as Amada, Mitsubishi Electric Corporation, Yamazaki Mazak Corporation and Koike Sanso Kogyo Co., Ltd. Amada enjoys a large market share in this business due to its large product line-up.

One of the principal products of Komatsu's sheet metal machine business is its plasma cutting machines. With technology that is original to Komatsu, Komatsu's plasma cutting machines boast high productivity and outstanding cost performance in terms of both operating and initial costs while maintaining a cutting quality that is equivalent to that of laser cutting machines. Such features are highly valued in this market and has enabled Komatsu to improve its profitability in this business.

In addition, Komatsu's 3D laser cutting machines that can be used to cut three dimensional objects are highly valued in the sheet metal machine market. In May 2013, Komatsu began the sales of the fiber laser cutting machine, which is the next generation of Komatsu's sheet metal machines.

### *(3) Machine Tools*

The principal products of Komatsu's machine tool business are machine tools that are used to cut and fabricate engine parts (transfer machines, crankshaft millers and grinding machines), general-purpose machining centers and wire saws. Major competitors in the market for machine tools used to cut and fabricate engine parts include JTEKT Corporation and ENSHU Limited of Japan and Gebrüder Heller Maschinenfabrik GmbH of Germany. Komatsu believes that it continues to maintain a competitive edge in the global market for machine tools used to cut and fabricate engine parts based on its technological edge and broad product line-up.

In addition, wire saws that are used to slice silicon ingots, which are used to manufacture solar cells, are one of the principal products of Komatsu's machine tools business and China is Komatsu's major market for such machines. Major competitors in the wire saw market include Swiss manufacturers HCT Shaping Systems SA and Meyer Burger Technology AG.

Komatsu's wire saws are highly evaluated by customers because of their original wire technology. Komatsu maintains its competitive position in the wire saw market through the launch of its diamond-wire saws. In addition, Komatsu is developing wire saws to be used for the manufacturing of machines other than solar cells, which will be a new machining field for Komatsu.

## **REGULATIONS**

Komatsu is subject to a wide range of laws and regulations in the countries and regions where it operates, including safety regulations, restrictions on emissions, noise and vibration from its products, and various environmental controls regulating the manufacturing processes, such as the management of toxic chemicals and hazardous wastes, green procurement and recycling. Failure to comply can result in fines or penalties. Komatsu strives to comply with applicable laws and regulations. Komatsu does not expect that the costs of compliance with existing and reasonably foreseeable laws and regulations will have a material effect upon its financial position and results of operations, but it can be difficult to predict and estimate compliance costs and the burden new laws may impose on its operations. Some of the important laws and regulations that affect Komatsu's businesses are summarized below.

---

**Table of Contents**

*Regulations regarding engine emissions*

The Ministry of Land, Infrastructure and Transport of Japan ( MLIT ) introduced the approval system for low-emission type construction equipment used in construction in 1997, setting the maximum emission levels by model and power range. Under this system, manufacturers are required to file an application with MLIT for the approval of their low-emission type construction equipment which meets the standards set forth by MLIT. In 2006, a new law took effect in Japan to control exhaust emissions from off-road specific vehicles in the power range of 19kW to 560kW. In connection with the implementation of this new law, maximum emission levels for such equipment were lowered and the MLIT approval system was modified to require manufacturers to file an application with MLIT for the approval of such off-road specific vehicles (which previously was not required). MLIT and related ministries further introduced new maximum emission limits, which are similar to the Interim Tier 4 standards in the U.S. and the Stage III B standards in Europe, and the first stage of such new limits has become effective in Japan since 2011. The next set of emission level limits that must be complied with in Japan is expected to become effective in 2014 and is similar to the Tier 4 standards in the U.S. and the Stage IV standards in Europe, both of which are also expected to become effective in 2014.

In the United States, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency ( EPA ) establishes emission standards for diesel engines used in construction equipment, and the Tier I standards for engines of 130kW or greater first took effect in 1996. Since then, the EPA has lowered emission standards and the Interim Tier 4 standards, which are currently in effect, have been phased-in since 2011. The even more stringent Tier 4 standards are scheduled to be phased-in starting 2014.

In Europe, the Engine Emissions Directive 97/68/EC regarding measures against emission of gaseous and particulate pollutants from internal combustion engines to be installed in off-road mobile machinery went into effect in 1999. The Directive was amended by several Directives and the newest Directive 2011/88/EU took effect in 2011. The Stage III B standards have been phased-in since 2011. The next stage (Stage IV standards) is scheduled to be phased-in starting 2014, similar to Japan and the United States.

In China, the national standard for Engine Emissions GB20891-2007, introduced by the Law on Prevention and Control of Atmospheric Pollution and the Environmental Protection Law, was issued in 2007 and went into effect in 2007. The Stage II standards, which are currently in effect, have been phased-in since 2009. Both standards are mandatory, and similar to the EU Directives 97/68/EC. The Ministry of Environmental Protection ( MEP ) and its local delegates supervise implementation of the standards.

*Regulations regarding noise and vibration*

In Japan, MLIT established the approval system for low-noise emission and low-vibration type construction equipment in 1983. Under this system, manufacturers are required to file an application with MLIT for the approval of their low-noise and low-vibration type construction equipment which meet the standards set forth by MLIT. Initially, this approval system for noise emission and vibration was only used for noise emission. The current measurement method and limits on noise emission levels for the type approval system have been in effect since October 1997. While the maximum standards for noise emission established by MLIT are not legally binding, these maximum standards must be complied with in Japan in practice since only construction equipment that have obtained the required approvals are allowed to be used in construction projects under the direct control of MLIT. The type approval system has been in use for low-vibration type construction equipment since October 1996. Similar to the type approval system for noise emission, the maximum standards for vibration set by MLIT are not legally binding. However, unlike the type approval system for noise emission, construction equipment, such as vibratory hammers and hydraulic excavators, that have not obtained such approvals are allowed to be used in construction projects under the direct control of MLIT.

---

## Table of Contents

In Europe, Directive 95/27/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of June 1995 amending Council Directive 86/662/EEC on the limitation of noise emitted by hydraulic excavators, rope-operated excavators, dozers, loaders and excavator-loaders has been in effect since January 1997. This directive defined the maximum permissible sound-power levels of airborne noise emitted by these earth-moving machines under dynamic operating conditions and required manufacturers to obtain an EC type-examination certificate. The second stage of this directive, which requires further noise reduction, has been in effect since January 2006. Separately, in January 2002, Directive 2000/14/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council relating to the noise emission in the environment by equipment for use outdoors went into effect. This regulation applies to a wide range of product types from gardening equipment to construction and waste-management equipment, and requires such products to bear a CE-mark and indicate their guaranteed sound-power level before they could be sold in the European market. Under such directive, manufacturers are required to confirm that the noise emitted from their products would not exceed the guaranteed sound-power level. The second stage of this directive, which required further noise reduction, has been in effect since January 2006. The European Union periodically reviews and updates its noise regulations, and stricter noise limitations is expected to be imposed for some types of machines manufactured by Komatsu.

### *Regulations regarding hazardous substances*

Responding to the increase in environmental conservation awareness around the world, Komatsu has been making efforts for several decades to reduce the use of asbestos, lead and other substances of environmental concern.

In response to the enactment of the European regulation addressing Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals ( REACH ) in June 2007, Komatsu reviewed the list of substances approved for limited use and revised the designation of certain substances within its manufacturing plants to reduced or banned as appropriate. Through cooperation with suppliers, Komatsu has initiated a system to strengthen its control over substances of environmental concern used in its products, as manufacturers like Komatsu are required by REACH to provide information to consumers (i.e., customers that purchased the equipment new or used) about the name(s) and the amount(s) of substance(s) used in each machine/part.

### *Regulations regarding Safety*

In Europe, the Machinery Directive 89/392/EEC, which sets forth the essential requirements on machine safety, was published in 1989 and became effective in 1995. This Directive requires manufacturers to consider and meet certain standards relating to the health and safety of the operator of the equipment when designing and manufacturing equipment. The Directive 89/392/EEC was amended by several Directives and codified into Directive 98/37/EC in 1998. Based on Directive 98/37/EC, a newly amending Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC was published in 2006 and became effective on December 29, 2009. This new Machinery Directive updated Directive 98/37/EC in several respects. For example, the new Machinery Directive required manufacturers to provide clearer instructions as to the operation of its equipment. More specifically, to avoid any misunderstandings as to the operation or handling of the equipment due to various languages being used in the EU member states, the new Directive recommended decals (pictorial diagrams) to be placed on the equipment warning the operator of safety and handling issues. In light of such recommendation, Komatsu replaced all safety labels that had a textual explanation with those that have pictorial diagrams and simplified its decals. Another update included in the new Machinery Directive was to require manufacturers to improve the visibility of the operator of the equipment. In response to such update, Komatsu has made rear view cameras or mirror systems a standard feature of large-size machines it sells in Europe.

In China, the national standard GB25684 Earth-moving machinery Safety was issued by AOSIO and the Standardization Administration in 2010 and became effective on January 1, 2012. This standard is based on ISO 20474 (which provides comprehensive safety requirements); however, due to technological issues particular to China, not all of the requirements set forth in ISO 20474 are required to be satisfied under national standard GB25684. For example, manufacturers are encouraged, but not required, to follow the requirements relating to electromagnetic compatibility and visibility under national standard GB25684. Komatsu has applied some of the safety features incorporated in products sold in Europe to products manufactured and sold in China, such as the battery disconnect switch (i.e., switch that blocks the flow of electricity to prevent (1) equipment service personnel from being electrocuted while inspecting or maintaining equipment or (2) electrical discharge of the battery when the equipment is not in use for long periods of time) and decals, to respond to the new Chinese safety requirements.

---

## **Table of Contents**

Komatsu and its products are also subject to other health and safety regulatory standards, such as the Roll Over Protective Structures standards set forth by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration of the U.S. Department of Labor. In addition, Structural Standard on Vehicle Type Construction Machine were implemented under the Industrial Safety and Health Act of Japan. Komatsu expects to become subject to additional health and safety standards that are to become effective in the future, including safety requirements for large machines that are used in the mining industry.

### **MANAGEMENT POLICY AND STRATEGIES**

Below describes Komatsu's basic management policy and its mid- to long-range management plans.

#### *Basic Management Policy*

The cornerstone of Komatsu's management is commitment to Quality and Reliability for maximization of its corporate value. This commitment is not limited to delivering safe and innovative products and services which incorporate the viewpoints of customers. Komatsu is continuing its efforts to enhance the Quality and Reliability of all organizations, businesses, employees and management of the entire Komatsu Group. It is the top management task of Komatsu to continue improving the Quality and Reliability of all these, year after year.

#### *Mid- to Long-Range Management Plan and Issues Ahead*

Komatsu has worked to improve the added values of its products, further strengthen its operation in growth markets and enhance its continuous group-wide Kaizen (improvement) capability in particular under the "Global Teamwork for Tomorrow" mid-range management plan designed for a three-year period from April 1, 2010 to March 31, 2013. In this period, Komatsu business environment changed dramatically, as represented by a sharp hike of the yen against other major currencies, the Great East Japan Earthquake, dramatic changes in demand for wire saws, as well as construction and mining equipment in China and Indonesia. Under such an environment, Komatsu worked to maintain high profitability regardless of market conditions by improving selling prices and production costs and strengthening its corporate fundamentals to flexibly meet dynamic changes in foreign exchange rates and market demand.

Demand for construction and mining equipment plunged drastically under economic slowdowns worldwide as triggered by the financial crisis in the United States in September 2008, and then recovered sharply, driven by Chinese and Indonesian demand. Today, Komatsu expects that demand will remain at a standstill for the time being, mainly against the backdrop of demand in these two countries entering an adjustment phase. However, Komatsu projects that demand will steadily increase in the mid to long-range perspective, supported by global population growth and increasing rates of urbanization worldwide.

The company has developed the new three-year (FY2013-2015) mid-range management plan "Together We Innovate GEMBA Worldwide" to be completed in the fiscal year ending March 31, 2016.

The plan expresses that Komatsu Group employees worldwide will team up with distributors, suppliers and other partners, innovate customers GEMBA (workplace) together with them, and provide innovation designed to create new values, thereby working for sustainable growth of our core businesses of construction and mining equipment as well as industrial machinery.

With the proactive involvement of each and every employee in the tasks spelled out through in this management plan, we are working to further improve business performance and enhance our corporate value.

#### *1. Management Goals*

We at Komatsu define our corporate value as the total sum of trust given to us by society and all stakeholders. To increase this corporate value, we will consistently work on management tasks by upholding the following management goals and by achieving the following targets.

---

## **Table of Contents**

- (1) We work to attain the industry's top-level profitability and financial position.

(We will lift the target profitability line by strengthening our earning fundamentals.)

- (2) We will increase the level of profit redistribution to shareholders.

- (3) We will improve net debt-to-equity ratio and ROE, as we invest in our future growth.

### *2. Focused Efforts*

In the new mid-range management plan "Together We Innovate GEMBA Worldwide", we are going to work on the following focused activities based on the two paired wheels of the Growth Strategies designed to capitalize on our strengths and the Structural Reforms designed to strengthen our corporate fundamentals. At the same time, we are also making all-out efforts to improve the level of profit redistribution to our shareholders.

To effectively tackle the high hurdles of focused activities, it is indispensable that the teamwork of Komatsu Group's employees with GEMBA capabilities engage in continuous improvement activities by identifying workplace tasks and solving them. All Komatsu Group employees worldwide will continue to promote continuous improvement activities based on The KOMATSU Way. In particular, we will further strengthen brand management activities through which we strive to thoroughly understand customers' workplaces and become indispensable for them. In this way, we will develop human resources that are needed for business expansion on a global scale.

#### *(1) Growth strategies based on innovation*

We will continue to refine our strengths, such as accumulated ICT (Information and Communication Technology) expertise, development and production technologies for key components, global sales and service networks, and flexible procurement and production operations. We will also proactively collaborate on a global scope with companies having cutting-edge technologies in promising fields, regardless of the Komatsu Group, in order to develop technologies which enable us to evolve DANTOTSU products, DANTOTSU service and DANTOTSU solutions. In this manner, we will innovate customers' GEMBA jointly with them to speedily create new values in both domains of construction and mining equipment and industrial machinery.

We will expand investment in the development of next-generation products and develop and launch construction equipment of the future, which will enable further automation and unmanned operation by means of leading-edge ICT utilization. Specifically, we will continue to upgrade the Autonomous Haulage System (AHS) for driverless dump trucks in operation at large-scale mines in Chile and Australia, the fleet management system for forest machinery which is being introduced in Brazil, and intelligent Machine Control construction equipment designed to streamline construction and facilitate management of the entire construction process. We will also increase the number of successful follow-up models. In FY2013, as the leading models of our intelligent Machine Control construction equipment, we are going to launch medium-sized D61EXi/PXi bulldozers and medium-sized PC210LCi hydraulic excavators initially in the United States and Europe, respectively.

In the industrial machinery business, we are going to facilitate in-house development and production of key components in order to launch innovative products. In FY2013, we will be introducing a new fiber laser cutting machine which features high productivity and impressive reduction in running costs.

#### *(2) Growth strategies of existing businesses*

Starting in 2014, new emission control standards (e.g., Tier4 Final in the United States) will be introduced in the United States, Europe and Japan, which require further reduction of NOx (nitrogen oxides) and PM (particulate matter) emissions. We will integrate our in-house development and production strengths for engines, hydraulic units, control systems and so forth with leading-edge technologies, as we continue to develop new products designed to meet the new standards in FY2013, while working for a smooth market introduction. To expand earnings, we will strive to advance sales of strategic parts, such as buckets, teeth and track shoes in Strategic Markets with growth potential into the future as well as for mining equipment. We will also continue to reform our ordering system and logistics for spare parts. In FY2013, we are going to embark on worldwide sales of the Xcentric™ Ripper, an innovative attachment for hydraulic excavators for use in breaking rocks and demolition, initially in the United States and China.





**Table of Contents**

With respect to existing businesses with potential demand, which we have failed to capture, we will step up our involvement even by considering strategic alliances as one of our choices.

We will make a variety of information visible by continuing to advance the functions and utilization methods of the KOMTRAX which is in operation in over 300,000 units around the world as of March 31, 2013, coupled with the KOMTRAX Plus and the KOMTRAX Parts which we will introduce in FY2013. KOMTRAX Parts will enable us to learn about the conditions of parts and their replacement record. Additionally, we will work to enhance customer satisfaction by engaging in speedy parts delivery and service based on maximum utilization of the evolving KOMTRAX and by expanding the rental and used equipment, retail finance and other businesses in the value chain.

**(3) Structural reforms designed to reinforce the business foundation**

While we have about doubled sales of the Komatsu Group for the last 10 years, we have controlled fixed costs at about constant level. By separating costs from growth as our policy, we will continue to maintain an appropriate level of fixed costs. With respect to production, we are working to cut down electric power consumption to half at Japanese plants by reforming production and consolidating or renewing factory buildings. In FY2013, initially at the Awazu Plant in Ishikawa Prefecture, Japan, we are going to start building a new factory with leading-edge energy-saving facilities, which will also enable us to achieve innovative production efficiency.

We will also enhance the level of sales, production and inventory management by taking full advantage of the Global HANSEI Operation Center, and expanding the range of the Inventory Zero program for distributors to promote an appropriate level of their inventories of products and parts. In addition, to secure personnel and other resources needed for investment in future growth, we will engage in personnel and organizational relocation and other activities designed to facilitate the establishment of the direct linkage of GEMBA between the Komatsu Group and customers.

*Below are the financial targets that management has established for the Together We Innovate GEMBA Worldwide mid-range management plan.*

*Numerical Targets of Together We Innovate GEMBA Worldwide .*

Items	Targets for Fiscal Year	Results for Fiscal Year
	ending March 31, 2016	ended March 31, 2013
Operating income ratio	18 - 20%	11.2%
ROE: Return on equity	18 - 20%	11.5%
Net debt-to-equity ratio	0.3 or below	0.49
Consolidated payout ratio	30 - 50% (stably)	36.2%
ROE = Net income for the year / [(shareholders' equity at the beginning + shareholders' equity at the end of the fiscal year) / 2]		

Net debt-to-equity ratio = (interest-bearing debt - cash and cash equivalents - time deposits) / shareholders' equity

[Premises]

Items		Targets for Fiscal Year	Results for Fiscal Year
		ending March 31, 2016	ended March 31, 2013
Guideline on sales		¥2,300 bil ±200 bil	¥1,884.9 bil
	JPY/USD	¥90 - 95	¥83
Guideline on exchange rate	JPY/EUR	¥120 - 125	¥107
	JPY/RMB	¥15.0 - 15.3	¥13.2

**Table of Contents****C. Organizational Structure**

As of March 31, 2013, the Komatsu group included the Company, 146 consolidated subsidiaries and 35 affiliates accounted for by the equity method. The Company is the parent of the Komatsu group. The following is a list of the principal consolidated subsidiaries as of March 31, 2013.

Name	Country of Incorporation	Ownership Interest (proportion of voting power held) (%)
Komatsu Castex Ltd.	Japan	100.0
Komatsu Construction Equipment Sales and Service Japan Ltd.	Japan	100.0
Komatsu Used Equipment Corp.	Japan	100.0
Komatsu Rental Ltd.	Japan	100.0
Komatsu Forklift Japan Ltd.	Japan	100.0
Komatsu Logistics Corp.	Japan	100.0
Komatsu Industries Corporation	Japan	100.0
Komatsu NTC Ltd.	Japan	100.0
Komatsu Business Support Ltd.	Japan	100.0
Gigaphoton Inc.	Japan	100.0
Komatsu America Corp.	U.S.A.	100.0
Komatsu do Brasil Ltda.	Brazil	100.0
Komatsu Brasil International Ltda.	Brazil	100.0
Komatsu Holding South America Ltda.	Chile	100.0
Komatsu Cummins Chile Ltda.	Chile	81.8
Komatsu Cummins Chile Arrienda S.A.	Chile	81.8
		(100.0)
Komatsu Financial Limited Partnership	U.S.A.	100.0
Komatsu Europe International N.V.	Belgium	100.0
Komatsu UK Ltd.	U.K.	100.0
Komatsu Hanomag GmbH	Germany	100.0
Komatsu Mining Germany GmbH	Germany	100.0
Komatsu Utility Europe S.p.A.	Italy	100.0
Komatsu Forest AB	Sweden	100.0
Komatsu CIS LLC	Russia	100.0
Komatsu Financial Europe N.V.	Belgium	100.0
Komatsu Southern Africa (Pty) Ltd.	South Africa	80.0
PT Komatsu Indonesia	Indonesia	94.9
PT Komatsu Marketing & Support Indonesia	Indonesia	94.9
		(100.0)
Bangkok Komatsu Co., Ltd.	Thailand	74.8
Komatsu Marketing Support Australia Pty Ltd	Australia	60.0
Komatsu Australia Pty Ltd	Australia	60.0
		(100.0)
Komatsu Australia Corporate Finance Pty. Ltd.	Australia	60.0
Komatsu (China) Ltd.	China	100.0
Komatsu (Changzhou) Construction Machinery Corp.	China	85.0
Komatsu Shantui Construction Machinery Co., Ltd.	China	60.0
Komatsu Financial Leasing China Ltd.	China	100.0

Notes:

- 1) Percentage of ownership interest includes indirect ownership.
  
- 2) The Company has one significant subsidiary (as such term is defined in Rule 1-02(w) of Regulation S-X), which is Komatsu America Corp.

**Table of Contents****D. Property, Plants and Equipment**

Komatsu's manufacturing operations for the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment are conducted in 42 plants, 12 of which are located in Japan. As of March 31, 2013, 28 principal plants (out of 42 plants) had an aggregate manufacturing floor space of 1,982 thousand square meters (21,334 thousand square feet). Komatsu uses additional floor space at such plants and elsewhere as laboratories, office space, and employee housing and welfare facilities. Komatsu is capable of increasing production output at its manufacturing facilities by adjusting their manufacturing schedules.

Komatsu owns most of the manufacturing facilities and the land on which such facilities are located. A portion of the properties owned by Komatsu is subject to mortgages or other types of liens. As of March 31, 2013, the net book value of the properties owned by Komatsu was ¥585,220 million, none of which were subject to encumbrances.

The name and location of Komatsu's principal plants, their approximate aggregate floor space, and the principal products manufactured therein as of March 31, 2013 are as follows:

Name and Location	Floor Space		Principal products
	Thousand sq. meter	Thousand sq. ft	
<b>Japan</b>			
Awazu Plant	271	2,917	Small- and medium-sized hydraulic excavators, small- and medium-sized wheel loaders, small- and medium-sized bulldozers, motor graders
Komatsu, Ishikawa Kanazawa Plant	30	323	Super-large hydraulic excavators, presses
Kanazawa, Ishikawa Osaka Plant	166	1,787	Medium- and large-sized hydraulic excavators, large-sized bulldozers, recycling equipment
Hirakata, Osaka Oyama Plant 1)	225	2,422	Diesel engines, hydraulic equipment, axle
Oyama, Tochigi Ibaraki Plant	66	710	Dump trucks, articulated dump trucks, large wheel loaders, large wheel dozers
Hitachinaka, Ibaraki Koriyama Plant	42	452	Hydraulic equipment
Koriyama, Fukushima Shonan Plant	9	97	Controllers, monitors, KOMTRAX terminals, hybrid components
Shonan, Kanagawa Tochigi Plant	77	829	Forklift trucks, mini excavators, mini wheel loaders
Oyama, Tochigi Komatsu Castex Ltd.	101	1,087	Steel castings, iron castings, patterns for casting
Himi, Toyama Komatsu NTC Ltd.	68	732	Transfer machines, machining centers, laser cutting machines, wire saw
Nanto, Toyama			
<b>The Americas</b>			
Komatsu America Corp. Tennessee, U.S.A.	31	334	Medium-sized hydraulic excavators, articulated dump trucks, forest machine (crawler type)

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Illinois, U.S.A.	66	710	Large-sized dump trucks
Hensley Industries, Inc.	19	205	Buckets, teeth, edges, adapters
Texas, U.S.A.			
Komatsu do Brasil Ltda.	67	721	Medium-sized hydraulic excavators, small- and medium-sized wheel loaders, medium-sized bulldozers, motor graders
São Paulo, Brazil			

**Table of Contents**

Name and Location	Floor Space		Principal products
	Thousand sq. meter	Thousand sq. ft	
<b>Europe and CIS</b>			
Komatsu UK Ltd.	60	646	Medium- and large-sized hydraulic excavators
Birtley, UK			
Komatsu Hanomag GmbH	77	829	Wheeled hydraulic excavators, small- and medium-sized wheel loaders, mini wheel loaders
Hannover, Germany			
Komatsu Forest AB	16	172	Forest machine (wheel type)
Umea, Sweden			
Komatsu Mining Germany GmbH	27	291	Super-large hydraulic excavators
Dusseldorf, Germany			
Komatsu Utility Europe S.p.A.	43	463	Mini excavators, backhoe loaders, skid steer loaders
Este, Italy			
Komatsu Manufacturing Rus, LLC	39	420	Medium-sized hydraulic excavators, dump trucks
Yaroslavl, Russia			
<b>Asia (excluding Japan) and Oceania</b>			
PT Komatsu Indonesia	139	1,496	Medium- and large-sized hydraulic excavators, small- and medium-sized bulldozers, dump trucks and hydraulic equipment
Jakarta, Indonesia			
PT Komatsu Undercarriage Indonesia	30	323	Undercarriage components and spare parts
Bekasi, Indonesia			
Komatsu (Changzhou) Construction Machinery Corp.	78	840	Medium-sized hydraulic excavators, medium-sized wheel loaders, dump trucks
Jiangsu, China			
Komatsu Shantui Construction Machinery Co., Ltd.	65	700	Small- and medium-sized hydraulic excavators
Shandong, China			
Komatsu Undercarriage China Corp.	47	506	Crawler components
Shandong, China			
Komatsu (Shandong) Construction Machinery Corp.	92	990	Small- and medium-sized excavators, hydraulic equipment, steel castings, final drive, etc
Shandong, China			
Bangkok Komatsu Co., Ltd.	23	248	Medium-sized hydraulic excavators
Chonburi, Thailand			
Komatsu India Pvt. Ltd	8	86	Dump trucks
Kanchpuram, India			
Note:			

1) Komatsu Cummins Engine Co., Ltd. is located at the Oyama Plant.



**Table of Contents**

The head office of the Company is located in an office building in Tokyo, Japan which Komatsu owns. Komatsu considers that its manufacturing plants and other facilities are well maintained and believes that its plant capacity is adequate for its current operating requirements. To the best of management's knowledge, management does not believe that there are any significant environmental issues that may materially affect Komatsu's utilization of its assets.

## Plans for Capital Investments

As of the filing date of this annual report, Komatsu plans to make capital investments of ¥137,000 million in the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014. Of such amount, Komatsu has committed to make capital investments totaling approximately ¥13,100 million as of March 31, 2013.

The amount of capital investment expected to be made in the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014, the principal investment objectives and the sources of funding by operating segment are set forth in the below table.

<b>Operating Segment</b>	<b>Approximate expected capital investment amount in the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014 (Millions of Yen)</b>	<b>Principal investment objectives</b>	<b>Sources of funding</b>
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	131,000	To enhance production efficiency and flexibility, decrease electric power use, renew obsolete equipment and streamline production.	Funds on hand, bank borrowings, etc.
Industrial Machinery and Others	6,000	To renew obsolete equipment.	Funds on hand, bank borrowings, etc.
<b>Total</b>	<b>137,000</b>		

Note: Capital investment amounts exclude consumption tax.

With respect to the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment, Komatsu plans to make capital investments to enhance production efficiency and flexibility, decrease electric power use, renew obsolete equipment and streamline production.

With respect to the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment, Komatsu plans to continue making capital investments to renew obsolete equipment.

**Item 4A. Unresolved Staff Comments**

None.



---

## **Table of Contents**

### **Item 5. Operating and Financial Review and Prospects**

#### **A. Operating Results**

##### **Overview**

The following discussion and analysis provides information that Komatsu's management believes to be relevant in understanding Komatsu's consolidated financial condition and results of operations.

##### *Komatsu's Business*

Komatsu is a global organization engaged primarily in the manufacturing, development, marketing and sale of industrial-use equipment and products. Komatsu has the following two operating segments: (1) Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment and (2) Industrial Machinery and Others.

Consolidated net sales for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 4.9% from the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 to ¥1,884,991 million due to decreased sales in both the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment and the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment and the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment accounted for approximately 89.0% and 11.0% of consolidated net sales, respectively. Of the consolidated net sales for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, 20.2% of net sales were derived from sales to external customers located in Japan and 79.8% of net sales were derived from sales to external customers located outside of Japan. For additional information regarding Komatsu's products, competitive position, organizational structure, and property, plant and equipment, see Item 4. Information on the Company.

The average exchange rate between the Japanese yen and the U.S. dollar was ¥82.51 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 and ¥78.86 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. For additional discussion on the effect of foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations on Komatsu's business, see "Risk Factors" in Item 3.D. Key Information and "Comparison of Fiscal Years ended March 31, 2013 and 2012" and "Comparison of Fiscal Years ended March 31, 2012 and 2011" in Item 5.A. Operating Results.

##### *General Overview*

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, consolidated sales of the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment declined from the previous fiscal year, reflecting a decline in demand for construction equipment in China as a result of a slowdown in China's economic growth and a drop in demand for mining equipment mainly in Indonesia in light of the decrease in coal prices. In the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment, while sales of large presses to the automobile manufacturing industry and machine tools for use in automotive engine production increased from the previous fiscal year due to increased capital investment by automobile manufacturers, sales of wire saws for use in slicing silicon ingots for the solar cell market decreased in part due to a slowdown in China's economic growth, a decrease in the price of solar cells and reduced subsidies related to solar energy use in Europe. In addition, the demand for temporary housing units leveled off as the restoration and reconstruction of the Great East Japan Earthquake progressed.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, Komatsu made efforts to reinforce its aftermarket business by improving (1) its strategic parts operation (such as buckets and teeth), the demand for which is strong especially in the Strategic Markets and the mining industry, and (2) its Reman (Remanufacturing) and rebuild operations. Following North America and Europe, Komatsu launched new emission standards-compliant equipment models in Japan in July 2012. Komatsu also began offering in Japan and certain other countries KOMATSU CARE, a new service program designed to reduce the total lifecycle costs of its machines and to prolong machine life. In the forklift truck business, Komatsu launched its FH Series hydrostatic-driven forklift trucks in Japan in July 2012, which incorporates technological expertise in hydraulic control that Komatsu has accumulated and refined for construction equipment over the years. With steady order of its FH Series received since its introduction in Japan, Komatsu introduced its FH Series to the overseas markets in February 2013. Komatsu continues to make steady and sound progress with Rio Tinto to successfully complete the large-scale delivery of driverless dump trucks to iron ore mines in Australia pursuant to the Memorandum of Understanding between it and Rio Tinto signed in November 2011.

**Table of Contents***Summary of Operating Results*

Consolidated net sales for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 4.9% from the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 to ¥1,884,991 million due to decreased sales in both the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment and the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment.

Demand for construction equipment increased in North America and Japan as compared to the previous fiscal year as the housing sector and the rental and energy development industries in the U.S. recovered, and demand for construction equipment in the earthquake and tsunami-destroyed regions in Japan increased. Demand for construction equipment in China for hydraulic excavators, however, decreased as the pace of growth of the Chinese economy slowed down. While demand for mining equipment declined, especially in Indonesia as coal prices fell during the fiscal year, demand for mining equipment increased steadily especially in Latin America and Oceania in light of steady demand for copper and other natural resource. In addition, demand for both parts and services increased during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013.

In the Traditional Markets, the economic uncertainty in Europe continued to prevail against the backdrop of sovereign-debt problems. Demand for construction equipment remained sluggish, even in the major markets of Germany, France and the United Kingdom. On the other hand, in Japan, as the number for excess used equipment that is exported from Japan bottomed out, which had outnumbered demand for new equipment since around 2000, demand for new construction equipment increased. The increase in demand for new construction equipment in Japan was due in part to increased purchases of such equipment by rental companies who experienced greater demand for such equipment in light of the fact that the restoration and reconstruction projects after the Great East Japan Earthquake continued. In addition, demand for construction equipment in North America grew from the previous fiscal year, supported by increased demand in the housing sector as well as demand in the rental and energy development industries. In the Strategic Markets, while sales in China and Asia (including Indonesia) decreased as mentioned above, sales in Latin America and Oceania remained steady. In Latin America, demand for mining equipment remained strong, centering on copper mines in Chile and Peru, while demand for construction equipment was sluggish in Brazil. Demand for both mining and construction equipment remained steady in Oceania centering on iron mining and in light of demand for other natural resources. Komatsu developed and introduced to the market various types of construction and mining equipment during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. For information regarding such equipment, see Item 4.B. With respect to its retail finance business, total financial assets increased from the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This increase was due primarily to an increase of new financing contracts in North America and Oceania as well as the depreciation of the Japanese yen relative to other major currencies.

While sales of large presses to the automobile manufacturing industry and machine tools for use in automotive engine production increased from the previous fiscal year due to increased capital investment by automobile manufacturers, sales of wire saws used in the solar cell market decreased from the previous fiscal year in part due to a slowdown in China's economic growth, a decrease in the price of solar cells and reduced subsidies related to solar energy use in Europe. Extraordinary demand for temporary housing units that Komatsu experienced after the Great East Japan Earthquake came to an end during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 as the housing conditions of those affected by the Great East Japan Earthquake settled down. Komatsu made concerted efforts to develop new products that improved productivity and safety and had qualities that enhanced their environmental friendliness. In March 2013, Komatsu introduced the H1F-2 AC servo press and the PVS8525 servo press brake to the market, which followed the launch of the NTG-4SP grinding machine in November 2012.

Operating income for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 was ¥211,602 million, which decreased by 17.5% from the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This decrease in operating income was due primarily to the decrease in sales in China of construction equipment and in Indonesia of mining equipment.

Income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 18.0% from the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 to ¥204,603 million.

Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 24.4% to ¥126,321 million from the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

**Table of Contents***Key Management Indices*

Management uses the following six financial indicators to assess Komatsu's consolidated financial condition and consolidated results of operations: (1) net sales, (2) segment profit, (3) operating income, (4) operating margin, (5) return on equity ratio ( ROE ) and (6) net debt-to-equity ratio ( Net DER ). Set forth below is a summary of these key indicators for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013 and 2012.

Management considers consolidated segment profit to be one of its key management indices because it enables management to evaluate financial data without taking into account the effect of nonrecurring events and other factors unrelated to business activities, such as impairment loss or interest income/expense. Consolidated segment profit is not a consolidated income statement measurement under U.S. GAAP.

The following table summarizes information relating to the reconciliation of consolidated segment profit and consolidated operating income.

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Consolidated Segment Profit	¥ 214,012	¥ 258,663
Impairment loss on long-lived assets	(1,907)	(3,106)
Other operating income (expenses), Net	(503)	786
Consolidated Operating Income	¥ 211,602	¥ 256,343

Management Indices	Results for Fiscal Year Ended March 31,		Percentage Change 2013 vs. 2012
	2013	2012	
Consolidated Net Sales	¥ 1,884,991 million	¥ 1,981,763 million	-4.9%
Consolidated Segment Profit	¥ 214,012 million	¥ 258,663 million	-17.3%
Consolidated Operating Income	¥ 211,602 million	¥ 256,343 million	-17.5%
Consolidated Operating Margin <sup>1)</sup>	11.2%	12.9%	-1.7 points
ROE <sup>2)</sup>	11.5%	17.3%	-5.8 points
Net DER <sup>3)</sup>	0.49	0.56	-0.07
Notes:			

1) Operating Margin = Operating Income/Net Sales

2) ROE = Net Income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. for the fiscal year / {(Komatsu Ltd. Shareholders' Equity at the beginning of the fiscal year) + (Komatsu Ltd. Shareholders' Equity at the end of the fiscal year) / 2}

3) Net Debt-to-Equity Ratio = (Interest-bearing Debt - Cash and Cash Equivalents - Time Deposits) / Komatsu Ltd. Shareholders' Equity

---

**Table of Contents***Consolidated Net Sales*

Consolidated net sales for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 4.9%, or ¥96,772 million, to ¥1,884,991 million from ¥1,981,763 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This decrease was due primarily to decreased sales in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment as well as the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment. The demand decrease in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment was due mainly to a decrease in demand for construction equipment in China as a result of a slowdown in China's economic growth and a drop in demand for mining equipment mainly in Indonesia in light of the decrease in coal prices. In the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment, while sales of large presses to the automobile manufacturing industry and machine tools for use in automotive engine production increased from the previous fiscal year due to increased capital investment by automobile manufacturers, sales of wire saws for use in slicing silicon ingots for the solar cell market decreased in part due to a slowdown in China's economic growth, a decrease in the price of solar cells and reduced subsidies related to solar energy use in Europe. In addition, the demand for temporary housing units leveled off as the restoration and reconstruction of the Great East Japan Earthquake progressed. As a result, consolidated sales in both operating segments declined from the previous fiscal year.

*Consolidated Segment Profit*

Consolidated segment profit for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 17.3% to ¥214,012 million as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

This decrease in segment profit was due primarily to negative factors such as decreased sales in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment as well as the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment, which outweighed (1) various efforts undertaken by Komatsu, such as efforts to realize product sales at higher prices and reduce production costs, and (2) positive factors such as favorable changes in foreign exchange rates, such as the depreciation of the Japanese yen against the U.S. dollar, Euro and Renminbi.

*Consolidated Operating Income, Consolidated Operating Margin*

Consolidated operating income for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 was ¥211,602 million, down by 17.5% or ¥44,741 million from ¥256,343 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

This decrease in operating income was due primarily to negative factors such as decreased sales in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment as well as the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment, which outweighed (1) various efforts undertaken by Komatsu, such as efforts to realize product sales at higher prices and reduce production costs, and (2) positive factors such as favorable changes in foreign exchange rates, such as the depreciation of the Japanese yen against the U.S. dollar, Euro and Renminbi.

Consolidated operating margin for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 1.7 percentage points to 11.2% from 12.9% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

*ROE*

Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 24.4% to ¥126,321 million as compared with the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 due primarily to the decrease in operating income. As a result, ROE for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 5.8 percentage points to 11.5% from 17.3% in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

*Net DER*

Komatsu's aggregate interest-bearing debt as of March 31, 2013 was ¥679,763 million, which increased by ¥31,963 million as compared to March 31, 2012. This increase was due primarily to changes in foreign exchange rates, such as the depreciation of the Japanese yen against the U.S. dollar, Euro and Renminbi.

Net interest-bearing debt after deducting cash and deposits also increased by ¥22,112 million to ¥585,926 million in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. As a result, Net DER for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased to 0.49 to 1 from 0.56 to 1 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.



---

**Table of Contents***Critical Accounting Policies*

Komatsu prepares its consolidated financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP. Komatsu's management regularly makes certain estimates and judgments that Komatsu believes are reasonable based upon available information. These estimates and judgments affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities as of the date of the financial statements, the reported amounts of income and expenses during the periods presented, and the disclosed information regarding contingent liabilities and debts. These estimates and judgments are based on Komatsu's historical experience, terms of existing contracts, Komatsu's observance of trends in the industry, information provided by its customers and information available from other outside sources, as appropriate.

By their nature, these estimates and judgments are subject to an inherent degree of uncertainty, and may differ from actual results. For a summary of Komatsu's significant accounting policies, including the critical accounting policies discussed below, see Note 1 to the Consolidated Financial Statements. Komatsu's management believes that the following accounting policies are critical in fully understanding and evaluating Komatsu's reported financial results.

(1) Allowance for Doubtful Receivables

Komatsu estimates the collectability of its trade receivables taking into consideration numerous factors, including the current financial position of each customer. Komatsu establishes an allowance for expected losses based on individual credit information, historical experience and assessment of overdue receivables. Komatsu continually analyzes data obtained from internal and external sources in order to become familiar with customers' credit situations. Since Komatsu's historical loss experiences have fallen within their original estimates and established provisions, Komatsu's management believes its allowance for doubtful receivables to be adequate. The total bad debt expenses for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 were ¥3,050 million, ¥2,105 million and ¥5,307 million, respectively. If the composition of Komatsu's trade receivable were to change or the financial position of each customer were to change due to an unexpected significant shift in the economic environment, it is possible that the accuracy of its estimates could be affected and thus its financial position and results of operations could be materially affected. For additional information, see Note 4 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

(2) Deferred Income Tax Assets and Uncertain Tax Positions

Komatsu estimates income taxes and income tax payable in accordance with applicable tax laws in each of the jurisdictions in which it operates. Net operating loss carry forwards and temporary differences resulting from differing treatment of items for taxation and financial accounting and reporting purposes are recognized on Komatsu's consolidated balance sheet by adjusting the effect for deferred income tax assets and liabilities. Komatsu is required to assess the likelihood that each of its group company's deferred tax assets will be recovered from future taxable income estimated for each group company and the available tax planning strategies. Komatsu's management estimates its future taxable income and considers the likelihood of recovery of deferred tax assets based on the management plan authorized by the board of directors, periodic operational reports of each group company, future market conditions and tax planning strategies, and, to the extent Komatsu's management believes that any such recovery is not likely, each group company establishes a valuation allowance to reduce the amount of deferred tax assets reflected in the consolidated balance sheet. Changes to the amount and timing of future taxable income determined by Komatsu's management could result in increases to the valuation allowance.

Benefits derived from uncertain tax positions are recognized when a particular tax position meets the more-likely-than-not recognition threshold based on the technical merits of such position. A benefit is measured as the largest amount of benefit that is greater than 50 percent likely of being realized upon a final settlement with the appropriate taxing authority. Komatsu assesses the likelihood of sustaining such tax positions at each reporting date, with any changes in estimate reflected in the financial statements for the period during which such changes occur, until such time as the positions are effectively settled.

While Komatsu's management believes that all deferred tax assets after adjustments for valuation allowance will be realized and all material uncertain tax positions that are recognized will be successfully sustained, Komatsu may be required to adjust its deferred tax assets or valuation allowance or reserve for unrecognized tax benefits if its estimates differ from actual results due to poor operating results, lower future taxable income as compared to estimated taxable income or different interpretations of tax laws by the relevant tax authorities. These adjustments to the valuation allowance or recognized tax benefits could materially affect Komatsu's financial position and results of operations.

For additional information, see Note 15 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

---

**Table of Contents**

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012, management changed its assessment of the ability to realize a deferred tax asset of one of its wholly owned subsidiaries (Komatsu Rental Ltd.) and reduced its valuation allowances. The merger of such subsidiary into the Company was deemed prudent during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012, and the Company decided to execute such merger due to changes in the operations of such subsidiary and its business outlook. More specifically, the decrease in valuation allowance for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 was due primarily to a change in assessment of the likelihood of recovery of a deferred tax asset in light of such merger, which decreased valuation allowance by ¥12,686 million.

(3) Valuation of Long-Lived Assets and Goodwill

Komatsu's long-lived assets are reviewed for potential impairment whenever events or changes in circumstance indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be recoverable, such as a decrease in future cash flows caused by a change in business environment. The recoverability of assets to be held and used is measured by comparing the carrying amount of a particular asset to the estimated future undiscounted cash flow expected to be generated by such asset. Such future undiscounted cash flow is estimated in accordance with Komatsu's management plan. The management plan is established by taking into consideration, to the extent possible, management's best estimates on the fluctuation of sales prices, changes in manufacturing costs and sales, general and administrative expenses based on expected sales volumes derived from market forecasts available through outside research institutions and through customers.

If the carrying amount of an asset exceeds its future undiscounted cash flow and such asset is considered unrecoverable and identified as an impaired asset, Komatsu recognizes an impairment loss based on the amount by which the carrying amount of the asset exceeds its fair value. Fair value is customarily measured based on the asset's future discounted cash flow, and the rate used to discount such cash flow is the weighted average capital cost reflecting the fluctuation risk of future cash flow in the capital markets. As an alternative to such customary method, fair value may also be measured based on an independent appraisal. Long-lived assets to be disposed of are reported at the lower of the carrying amount or fair value less costs of sales.

Consolidated impairment loss on long-lived assets for use for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 were ¥1,907 million, ¥3,106 million and ¥5,142 million, respectively.

Komatsu reviews its goodwill annually for impairment as of March 31. An impairment of goodwill is deemed to occur when the carrying amount of the reporting unit, including goodwill, exceeds its estimated fair value. Impairment losses on goodwill are recognized by conducting a two step test. The first of the two step test, which is used to identify potential impairment, compares the fair value of a reporting unit with its carrying amount, including goodwill. If the carrying amount of a reporting unit exceeds its fair value, the second step of the test is performed. The second step of the test, which is used to measure the amount of impairment loss, compares the implied fair value of the goodwill of the reporting unit with the carrying amount of that goodwill. Determination of the implied fair value of the goodwill requires management to estimate the fair value of other identifiable assets and liabilities of the reporting unit based on discounted cash flows, appraisals or other valuation methods. If the carrying amount of the goodwill of the reporting unit exceeds the implied fair value of that goodwill, an impairment loss is recognized in an amount equal to that excess.

Komatsu completed its annual impairment assessment of goodwill for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. Management concluded that no goodwill impairment had occurred as of March 31, 2013. The fair value of each of Komatsu's reporting units significantly exceeded their respective carrying amounts.

In the event that Komatsu's strategy or market conditions in which it operates changes, estimates of future cash flows to be generated by an asset and evaluations of fair value would be affected, and the assessment of the ability to recover the carrying amount of long-lived assets and goodwill may change. Accordingly, such changes in assessment could materially affect Komatsu's financial position and results of operations.

**Table of Contents****(4) Fair Value of Financial Instruments**

The fair values of derivative financial instruments, consisting principally of foreign currency contracts and interest swap agreements, are estimated by obtaining quotes from brokers based on observable market inputs.

While fair value estimates are made at a specific point in time based on relevant market information and information about the financial instruments, these estimates are subjective in nature. The estimated fair values may change due to uncertainties of the financial markets, and may therefore differ from actual results. The fair values of marketable investment securities are stated at market price. In the case of a decrease in market price, in periodically assessing other-than-temporary impairment of marketable investment securities and investments in affiliates, Komatsu considers the period and amount of its decline, and the financial conditions and prospects of each subject company. The realized losses in investment securities for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 were ¥4,192 million, ¥2,613 million and ¥156 million, respectively. While Komatsu believes that there are no major impairments of its investment securities or investments in affiliates at present, if the performance and business conditions of any subject company deteriorate due to a change in business circumstances, Komatsu may recognize an impairment of its investments.

**(5) Pension Liabilities and Expenses**

The amount of Komatsu's pension obligations and net period pension costs are dependent on certain assumptions used to calculate such amounts. These assumptions are described in Note 12 to the Consolidated Financial Statements and include the discount rate, expected rate of return on plan assets and rates of increase in compensation. In accordance with U.S. GAAP, actual results that differ from these assumptions are accumulated and amortized over future service years of employees and therefore generally affect Komatsu's recognized expenses and recorded obligations during such future periods.

The discount rate is determined based on the rates of return of high-quality fixed income investments currently available and expected to be available until the maturity of the pension benefits. The expected long-term rate of return on plan assets is determined by taking into consideration the current expectations for future returns and actual historical returns of each plan asset category.

While Komatsu believes that its assumptions are appropriate, in the event that actual results differ significantly from these assumptions or significant changes are made to these assumptions, Komatsu's pension obligations and future expenses may be affected.

The following table illustrates the sensitivity of pension obligations and net periodic pension costs to changes in discount rates and expected long-term rate of return on pension plan assets, while holding all other assumptions constant, for Komatsu's pension plans as of March 31, 2013.

	Pension obligations	Net periodic pension costs
Change in assumption	(Billions of Yen)	(Billions of Yen)
0.5% increase/ decrease in Discount rate	-12.2 /+13.2	-1.1 /+1.2
0.5% increase/ decrease in expected long-term rate of return		-0.4 / +0.4
(6) Recent Accounting Standards Not Yet Adopted		

In February 2013, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ( FASB ) issued Accounting Standards Update ( ASU ) 2013-02, Reporting of Amounts Reclassified Out of Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income . ASU 2013-02 requires an entity to report the effect of reclassifications out of accumulated other comprehensive income. This ASU will be applied prospectively and will be adopted by Komatsu beginning April 1, 2013.



**Table of Contents****Comparison of the Fiscal Years Ended March 31, 2013 and 2012**

The following tables set forth our consolidated financial and operating information, including numerical data expressed as a percentage of total consolidated net sales for the periods indicated, and the changes in each consolidated financial line item between the indicated fiscal years.

**Consolidated Statements of Income Information**

	Millions of Yen				Percentage Change 2013 vs. 2012
	Fiscal Years Ended March 31, 2013		2012		
<b>Net sales</b>	<b>¥ 1,884,991</b>	100.0%	¥ 1,981,763	100.0%	-4.9%
<b>Cost of sales</b>	<b>1,377,459</b>	73.1%	1,440,765	72.7%	-4.4%
<b>Selling, general and administrative expenses</b>	<b>293,520</b>	15.6%	282,335	14.2%	4.0%
<b>Impairment losses on long-lived assets</b>	<b>1,907</b>	0.1%	3,106	0.2%	-38.6%
<b>Other operating income (expenses), net</b>	<b>(503)</b>	-0.0%	786	0.0%	
<b>Operating income</b>	<b>211,602</b>	11.2%	256,343	12.9%	-17.5%
<b>Other expenses, net</b>					
Interest and dividend income	<b>4,277</b>		3,776		13.3%
Interest expense	<b>(8,236)</b>		(7,784)		5.8%
Other, net	<b>(3,040)</b>		(2,726)		11.5%
<b>Total</b>	<b>(6,999)</b>		(6,734)		3.9%
<b>Income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies</b>	<b>204,603</b>	10.9%	249,609	12.6%	-18.0%
<b>Income taxes</b>					
Current	<b>74,628</b>		66,420		
Deferred	<b>(5,539)</b>		8,050		
<b>Total</b>	<b>69,089</b>	3.7%	74,470	3.8%	-7.2%
<b>Income before equity in earnings of affiliated companies</b>	<b>135,514</b>	7.2%	175,139	8.8%	-22.6%
<b>Equity in earnings of affiliated companies</b>	<b>1,621</b>	0.1%	1,609	0.1%	0.7%
<b>Net income</b>	<b>137,135</b>	7.3%	176,748	8.9%	-22.4%
<b>Less: Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests</b>	<b>10,814</b>	0.6%	9,707	0.5%	11.4%
<b>Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd.</b>	<b>¥ 126,321</b>	6.7%	¥ 167,041	8.4%	-24.4%

**Yen****Per share data****Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd.:**

Basic	<b>132.64</b>	173.47
Diluted	<b>132.51</b>	173.32

<b>Cash dividends per share 1)</b>	<b>¥ 45.00</b>	¥ 41.00
------------------------------------	----------------	---------

Note:

(1) Cash dividends per share provided above are based on dividends paid each fiscal year.

**Table of Contents***Net Sales*

Consolidated net sales for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 4.9%, or ¥96,772 million, to ¥1,884,991 million from ¥1,981,763 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This decrease was due primarily to decreased sales in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment as well as the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment.

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, net sales to external customers for the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment decreased by 3.6%, or ¥62,299 million, to ¥1,677,049 million as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This demand decrease was due mainly to a decrease in demand for construction equipment in China as a result of a slowdown in China's economic growth and a drop in demand for mining equipment mainly in Indonesia in light of the decrease in coal prices.

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, net sales to external customers in the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment decreased by 14.2%, or ¥34,473 million, to ¥207,942 million as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. While sales of large presses to the automobile manufacturing industry and machine tools for use in automotive engine production increased from the previous fiscal year due to increased capital investment by automobile manufacturers, sale of wire saws for use in slicing silicon ingots for the solar cell market decreased in part due to a slowdown in China's economic growth, a decrease in the price of solar cells and reduced subsidies related to solar energy use in Europe. In addition, the demand for temporary housing units leveled off as the restoration and reconstruction of the Great East Japan Earthquake progressed. As a result, consolidated sales in this business segment decreased from the previous fiscal year.

*Cost of Sales*

Cost of sales on a consolidated basis decreased by 4.4%, or ¥63,306 million, to ¥1,377,459 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 from ¥1,440,765 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 primarily due to decreased net sales. On the other hand, the ratio of cost of sales to net sales for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 increased to 73.1% from 72.7% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This increase was due primarily to certain fixed costs not being absorbed fully as a result of decreased sales volume.

*Selling, General and Administrative Expenses*

Selling, general and administrative expenses increased by 4.0% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 to ¥293,520 million from ¥282,335 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012, due primarily to (1) increased R&D expenses, such as expenses for the development of next generation engines that comply with newly adopted emissions regulations and new hybrid products, which accounted for approximately ¥6,000 million, and (2) changes in foreign exchange rates, such as the depreciation of the Japanese yen against the U.S. dollar, Euro and Renminbi. The ratio of selling, general and administrative expenses to net sales also increased by 1.4 percentage points to 15.6% as compared to 14.2% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

*Impairment Losses on Long-Lived Assets*

Consolidated impairment losses on long-lived assets for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 38.6%, or ¥1,199 million, to ¥1,907 million as compared to ¥3,106 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. The losses for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 reflected impairment losses realized mainly with respect to property, plant and equipment.

*Other Operating Income (Expenses), net*

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, Komatsu recognized consolidated other operating expense, net of ¥503 million as compared to consolidated other operating income, net of ¥786 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This was due primarily to a decrease in gain resulting from the sale of property, plant and equipment as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

**Table of Contents***Operating Income*

Consolidated operating income for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 17.5%, or ¥44,741 million, to ¥211,602 million as compared to ¥256,343 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This decrease in operating income was due primarily to negative factors such as decreased sales in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment, which accounted for approximately ¥63.7 billion, and an increase in fixed costs, which accounted for approximately ¥7.1 billion. Such negative factors were partially offset by (1) various efforts undertaken by Komatsu, such as efforts to realize product sales at higher prices (which accounted for approximately ¥26.8 billion), and (2) positive factors such as favorable changes in foreign exchange rates, such as the depreciation of the Japanese yen against the U.S. dollar, Euro and Renminbi (which in the aggregate accounted for approximately ¥6.7 billion).

As a result, operating margin for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 1.7 percentage points to 11.2% from 12.9% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

*Other Expenses, net*

Consolidated other expenses, net for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 increased by 3.9%, or ¥265 million, to ¥6,999 million as compared to ¥6,734 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This increase was due primarily to increased interest expense. For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, interest expense increased by 5.8%, or ¥452 million, to ¥8,236 million as compared to ¥7,784 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This increase in interest expense, which contributed to the increase in other expenses, was due primarily to the increase in borrowings from external sources during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. Interest and dividend income increased by 13.3%, or ¥501 million, to ¥4,277 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 as compared to ¥3,776 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

*Income Before Income Taxes and Equity in Earnings of Affiliated Companies*

As a result of the above factors, consolidated income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 18.0%, or ¥45,006 million, to ¥204,603 million as compared to ¥249,609 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

*Income Taxes*

Consolidated income tax expense for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by ¥5,381 million to ¥69,089 million from ¥74,470 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. The actual effective tax rate for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 increased to 33.8% from 29.8% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. The difference of effective tax rates between the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 and 2012 is mainly due to the merger between Komatsu Rental Ltd. and the Company for the year ended March 31, 2012, which resulted in a change in assessment about the likelihood of recovery of a deferred tax asset.

The difference between the Japanese statutory tax rate of 38.1% and the actual effective tax rate of 33.8% was caused by income of certain foreign subsidiaries being taxed at a rate lower than the Japanese statutory tax rate, and deferred tax benefits caused by the reduction of the valuation allowance for certain deferred tax assets. For additional information, see Note 15 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

*Income Before Equity in Earnings of Affiliated Companies*

As a result of the above factors, consolidated income before equity in earnings of affiliated companies for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by ¥39,625 million to ¥135,514 million as compared to ¥175,139 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

*Equity in Earnings of Affiliated Companies*

Consolidated equity in earnings of affiliated companies for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 increased by ¥12 million to ¥1,621 million as compared to ¥1,609 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

**Table of Contents***Net income*

As a result of the above factors, consolidated net income for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 22.4%, or ¥39,613 million, to ¥137,135 million as compared to ¥176,748 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

*Net Income Attributable to Noncontrolling Interests*

Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 increased by ¥1,107 million to ¥10,814 million as compared to ¥9,707 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. Noncontrolling interests in income of consolidated subsidiaries increased mainly as a result of an increase in earnings recorded primarily by subsidiaries in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment, such as Komatsu Marketing Support Australia Pty Ltd.

*Net Income Attributable to Komatsu Ltd.*

As a result of the above, consolidated net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 24.4%, or ¥40,720 million, to ¥126,321 million as compared to ¥167,041 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. Accordingly, basic net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. per share decreased to ¥132.64 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 from ¥173.47 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. Diluted net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. per share decreased to ¥132.51 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 from ¥173.32 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

**Performance by Operating Segments**

The following table presents our segment net sales and segment profit for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013 and 2012. In evaluating the financial data for each operating segment, Komatsu's management considers sales by the location of its external customers to be particularly helpful for the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment, its primary operating segment. Accordingly, in addition to providing performance information by operating segments, the below table and related discussion provide information regarding sales in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment broken down by geographic locations of Komatsu's external customer.

**Performance by Operating Segments**

	Millions of Yen		Percentage Change 2013 vs. 2012
	Fiscal Years Ended March 31, 2013	2012	
<b>Net sales:</b>			
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment			
External Customers	¥ 1,677,049	¥ 1,739,348	-3.6%
Japan	292,732	286,342	2.2%
The Americas	535,750	443,044	20.9%
Europe and CIS	189,833	200,404	-5.3%
China	119,940	201,312	-40.4%
Asia (excluding Japan, China) and Oceania	411,059	481,277	-14.6%
Middle East and Africa	127,735	126,969	0.6%
Intersegment	2,530	4,925	-48.6%
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,679,579</b>	<b>1,744,273</b>	<b>-3.7%</b>
Industrial Machinery and Others			
External Customers	207,942	242,415	-14.2%
Intersegment	8,349	8,724	-4.3%
<b>Total</b>	<b>216,291</b>	<b>251,139</b>	<b>-13.9%</b>

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Elimination	(10,879)	(13,649)	-20.3%
<b>Consolidated Net Sales</b>	<b>¥ 1,884,991</b>	<b>¥ 1,981,763</b>	<b>-4.9%</b>
<b>Segment Profit:</b>			
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	¥ 208,951	¥ 246,291	-15.2%
Industrial Machinery and Others	6,222	16,779	-62.9%
<b>Total</b>	<b>215,173</b>	<b>263,070</b>	<b>-18.2%</b>

Note:

- 1) Transfers between segments are made at estimated arm's-length prices.

**Table of Contents***Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment**Net sales*

Total net sales to external customers in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 3.6%, or ¥62,299 million, to ¥1,677,049 million as compared to ¥1,739,348 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This decrease in sales was due primarily to (1) a decrease in demand in China for hydraulic excavators as the pace of growth of the Chinese economy slowed down and (2) a decrease in demand for mining equipment mainly in Indonesia in light of decreased coal prices.

Net sales to external customers in Japan for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 increased by 2.2%, or ¥6,390 million, to ¥292,732 million as compared to ¥286,342 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. As the sales of surplus used equipment exported from Japan bottomed out, which had outnumbered demand for new equipment since around 2000, demand for new construction equipment increased. The increase in demand for new construction equipment was due in part to increased purchases of such equipment by rental companies who experienced greater demand for such equipment in light of the fact that the restoration and reconstruction projects after the Great East Japan Earthquake continued. As a result, demand for construction equipment steadily increased and sales increased as compared to the previous fiscal year.

Net sales to external customers in the Americas for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 increased by 20.9%, or ¥92,706 million, to ¥535,750 million as compared to ¥443,044 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. In North America, demand for construction equipment started to increase during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 and continued throughout the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. This increase in demand was driven by the increased demand in the housing sector as well as strong demand in the rental equipment business and the energy development industry. During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, Komatsu worked aggressively to introduce new emission standards-compliant models with its new KOMATSU CARE program in North America. In addition, in response to increased demand for rental equipment, Komatsu worked to reinforce its distributors' rental equipment business in North America. In Latin America, demand for mining equipment remained strong, centering on copper mines in Chile and Peru, while demand for construction equipment was sluggish in Brazil. As a result, overall demand in the Americas for equipment was firm, and sales improved from the previous fiscal year.

Net sales to external customers in Europe and CIS for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 5.3%, or ¥10,571 million, to ¥189,833 million as compared to ¥200,404 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. As economic uncertainty prevailed against the backdrop of sovereign-debt problems in Europe, demand remained sluggish, even in the major markets of Germany, France and the United Kingdom. As a result, sales of construction, mining and utility equipment in Europe decreased from the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. While continuing to introduce new emission standards-compliant models to the European market during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, Komatsu also made concerted efforts to prepare for the launch during the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014 of construction equipment with its intelligent Machine Control, a technology designed to automate construction. In CIS, demand for mining equipment remained firm, especially in gold mines, and sales increased from the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. The increase in sales in CIS, however, was not sufficient to offset the decreased sales in Europe.

Net sales to external customers in China for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 40.4%, or ¥81,372 million, to ¥119,940 million as compared to ¥201,312 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. While the Chinese government introduced credit-easing measures during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, there were no clear signs that new infrastructure developments were going to commence. As a result, demand for construction equipment, and particularly demand for hydraulic excavators, decreased considerably compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012, which adversely affected sales.

Net sales to external customers in Asia (excluding Japan and China) and Oceania for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 14.6%, or ¥70,218 million, to ¥411,059 million as compared to ¥481,277 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. In Asia, while demand increased in Thailand where such equipment has been in use for the reconstruction of areas damaged by the flood in 2011, demand for large- and medium-sized equipment used in mines particularly in Indonesia, the largest market by sales in Southeast Asia, decreased as the price of thermal coal decreased. As a result, sales in Asia decreased as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. In Oceania, demand for mining equipment for use in iron ore mines and demand for construction equipment remained steady, and sales increased from the previous fiscal year. Komatsu continued to make steady and sound progress with Rio Tinto to successfully complete the large-scale delivery of driverless dump trucks to iron ore mines in Australia pursuant to the Memorandum of Understanding between it and Rio Tinto signed in November 2011.

---

**Table of Contents**

Net sales to external customers in the Middle East and Africa for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 increased by 0.6%, or ¥766 million, to ¥127,735 million as compared to ¥126,969 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. In the Middle East, sales declined from the previous fiscal year, particularly because demand was sluggish in Turkey, one of its major markets in the region. In addition, because the Saudi Arabian market showed signs of promising growth in demand in the future, Komatsu signed a new distribution contract with a leading local company in December 2012. In Africa, sales increased as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012, supported particularly by firm demand for equipment used in gold mines. Komatsu also continued to strengthen its sales and product support operations by implementing measures to improve its spare delivery parts operation, which included opening new parts depots jointly with distributors in southern Africa.

*Segment Profit*

Segment profit for the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 15.2%, or ¥37,340 million, to ¥208,951 million from ¥246,291 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. Although there were positive factors including (1) the realization of sales at higher prices (which increased segment profit by approximately ¥26.8 billion) and (2) favorable changes in foreign exchange rates as the Japanese yen depreciated against the U.S. dollar and Renminbi (which increased segment profit by approximately ¥6.7 billion), such positive factors were fully offset by the decrease in sales (which decreased segment profit by approximately ¥63.7 billion).

*Production Scale*

Production scale for the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment decreased by 15.1% from the previous fiscal year to approximately ¥1,570.9 billion (based on sales price).

*Industrial Machinery and Others**Net Sales*

Total net sales to external customers in the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 14.2%, or ¥34,473 million, to ¥207,942 million as compared to ¥242,415 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. While sales of large presses to the automobile manufacturing industry and machine tools for use in automotive engine production increased from the previous fiscal year due to increased capital investment by automobile manufacturers, sales of wire saws for use in slicing silicon ingots for the solar cell market decreased in part due to a slowdown in China's economic growth, a decrease in the price of solar cells and reduced subsidies related to solar energy use in Europe. In addition, the demand for temporary housing units leveled off as the restoration and reconstruction of the Great East Japan Earthquake progressed.

*Segment Profit*

Segment profit for the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 decreased by 62.9%, or ¥10,557 million, to ¥6,222 million from ¥16,779 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. This decrease was due primarily to the decrease in demand for higher-margin wire saws.

*Production Scale*

Production scale for the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment decreased by 22.2% from the previous fiscal year to approximately ¥202.4 billion (based on sales price).

**Table of Contents****Comparison of the Fiscal Years Ended March 31, 2012 and 2011**

The following tables set forth our consolidated financial and operating information, including numerical data expressed as a percentage of total consolidated net sales for the periods indicated, and the changes in each consolidated financial line item between the indicated fiscal years.

**Consolidated Statements of Income Information**

	Millions of Yen				Percentage change 2012 vs. 2011
	Fiscal Years Ended March 31, 2012		2011		
Net sales	¥ 1,981,763	100.0%	¥ 1,843,127	100.0%	7.5%
Cost of sales	1,440,765	72.7%	1,343,464	72.9%	7.2%
Selling, general and administrative expenses	282,335	14.2%	264,691	14.4%	6.7%
Impairment losses on long-lived assets	3,106	0.2%	5,142	0.3%	-39.6%
Other operating expenses, net	786	0.0%	(6,901)	-0.4%	
Operating income	256,343	12.9%	222,929	12.1%	15.0%
Other expenses, net					
Interest and dividend income	3,776		4,493		-16.0%
Interest expense	(7,784)		(6,475)		20.2%
Other, net	(2,726)		(1,138)		139.5%
<b>Total</b>	<b>(6,734)</b>		<b>(3,120)</b>		<b>115.8%</b>
Income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies	249,609	12.6%	219,809	11.9%	13.6%
Income taxes					
Current	66,420		57,923		
Deferred	8,050		6,783		
<b>Total</b>	<b>74,470</b>	<b>3.8%</b>	<b>64,706</b>	<b>3.5%</b>	<b>15.1%</b>
Income before equity in earnings of affiliated companies	175,139	8.8%	155,103	8.4%	12.9%
Equity in earnings of affiliated companies	1,609	0.1%	2,724	0.1%	-40.9%
<b>Net income</b>	<b>176,748</b>	<b>8.9%</b>	<b>157,827</b>	<b>8.6%</b>	<b>12.0%</b>
Less net income attributable to noncontrolling interests	(9,707)	-0.5%	(7,075)	-0.4%	37.2%
<b>Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd.</b>	<b>¥ 167,041</b>	<b>8.4%</b>	<b>¥ 150,752</b>	<b>8.2%</b>	<b>10.8%</b>
<b>Yen</b>					
<b>Per share data</b>					
<b>Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd.:</b>					
Basic	173.47		155.77		
Diluted	173.32		155.66		
<b>Cash dividends per share <sup>1)</sup></b>	<b>¥ 41.00</b>		<b>¥ 26.00</b>		

Note:



- (1) Cash dividends per share provided above are based on dividends paid each fiscal year.

---

**Table of Contents***Net Sales*

Consolidated net sales for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 7.5%, or ¥138,636 million, to ¥1,981,763 million from ¥1,843,127 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. This increase was due to increased sales in both the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment as well as the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment.

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012, net sales to external customers for the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment increased by 7.7%, or ¥123,659 million, to ¥1,739,348 million as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. While demand for construction equipment decreased in China, such decrease in demand was offset by the increase in demand for such equipment in Komatsu's other Strategic Markets (such as Asia (excluding China)) and its Traditional Markets of Japan and North America. With respect to mining equipment, demand for new equipment remained high against the backdrop of high commodity prices. Komatsu also increased its parts sales and service revenues in the mining equipment sector as the number of Komatsu's mining equipment in operation continued to increase. Komatsu was able to capture this increase in demand for construction and mining equipment, and increase sales from the previous fiscal year in part because it was able to quickly restore its production facilities to normal conditions after the Great East Japan Earthquake and subsequent tsunami. Various efforts made by Komatsu also contributed to the increase in sales. For example, Komatsu took continuous measures to increase the sales price of its products. Komatsu also accelerated the launch of its new HB205 and HB215 LC hybrid hydraulic excavators outside of Japan, which have already been launched in 12 countries, such as China and other countries in North America, Europe, Central and South America, Southeast Asia and Oceania, targeting its sale promotions primarily on heavy-use customers who desire and are sensitive to fuel efficiency. These hybrid hydraulic excavators were well received and contributed to the increase in sales. In addition, Komatsu continued to work to expand sales of new emission standards-compliant models in North America and Europe.

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012, net sales to external customers in the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment increased by 6.6%, or ¥14,977 million, to ¥242,415 million as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. Sales of wire saws decreased in the second quarter of the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 in light of the credit squeeze measure implemented by the Chinese government, the reduction of solar energy use subsidies provided by governments in Europe. The decrease in solar cell prices also contributed to such decreased net sales in wire saws as Komatsu's customers that manufacture solar cells reduced their capital investments in light of the weak business environment. As a result, sales of wire saws for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 decreased sharply from the previous fiscal year. Sales of presses and machine tools, on the other hand, increased from the previous fiscal year in light of increased capital investments made by the automobile manufacturing industry, which showed signs of recovery. In addition, Gigaphoton Inc. became a consolidated subsidiary in May 2011. The increase in the sales of presses and machine tools and the inclusion of Gigaphoton Inc. as a consolidated subsidiary for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 offset the decrease in sales of wire saws for such fiscal year.

*Cost of Sales*

Cost of sales on a consolidated basis increased by 7.2%, or ¥97,301 million, to ¥1,440,765 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 from ¥1,343,464 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. On the other hand, the ratio of cost of sales to net sales for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 decreased to 72.7% from 72.9% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. This decrease was due primarily to (1) certain costs being absorbed due to increased sales volume, (2) the realization of product sales at higher prices and (3) Komatsu's efforts to reduce manufacturing costs by improving production efficiency. Such factors offset unfavorable changes in foreign exchange rates as the Japanese yen strengthened sharply against the U.S. dollar, Euro and Renminbi.

**Table of Contents***Selling, General and Administrative Expenses*

Selling, general and administrative expenses increased by 6.7% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 to ¥282,335 million from ¥264,691 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011, due primarily to (1) the increase in selling expenses, such as shipping and handling costs and sales commission, which primarily resulted from the increase in sales volume, (2) the increase in expenses to strengthen product support capabilities (such as expenses relating to increasing the number of depots that supply Komatsu parts) and services to customers (such as expenses relating to increasing the number of facilities that provide maintenance and repair services) and (3) the increase in R&D expenses such as the development of next generation engines that comply with newly adopted emissions regulations that will become effective in the near future and new hybrid products. On the other hand, the ratio of selling, general and administrative expenses to net sales decreased by 0.2 percentage points to 14.2% as compared to 14.4% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011, due to Komatsu's continuous efforts to decrease fixed costs by reforming and improving the efficiency of its back-office functions.

*Impairment Losses on Long-Lived Assets*

Consolidated impairment losses on long-lived assets for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 amounted to ¥3,106 million as compared to ¥5,142 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011.

*Other Operating Income (Expenses), net*

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012, Komatsu recognized consolidated other operating income, net of ¥786 million as compared to consolidated other operating expenses, net of ¥6,901 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011.

*Operating Income*

Consolidated operating income for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 15.0%, or ¥33,414 million, to ¥256,343 million as compared to ¥222,929 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. This increase in operating income was due primarily to positive factors such as (1) the increase in sales for construction equipment in Japan, North America and the Strategic Markets (except China) as well as for high-margin mining equipment and parts, and (2) various efforts undertaken by Komatsu, such as the realization of sales of products at higher prices and the reduction of production costs, which outweighed negative factors such as unfavorable changes in foreign exchange rates, such as the sharp appreciation of the Japanese yen against the U.S. dollar, Euro and Renminbi.

As a result, operating margin for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 0.8 percentage points to 12.9% from 12.1% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011.

*Other Expenses, net*

Consolidated other expenses, net for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 amounted to ¥6,734 million as compared to ¥3,120 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. This increase was due primarily to the increase in losses recorded upon the revaluation of investment in securities by ¥2,457 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 to ¥2,613 million as compared to ¥156 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011 due to the decline in the stock market. Interest expense for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 20.2%, or ¥1,309 million, to ¥7,784 million as compared to ¥6,475 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011, due primarily to the increase in borrowings from external sources during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. In addition, interest and dividend income decreased by 16.0%, or ¥717 million, to ¥3,776 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 as compared to ¥4,493 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011.

---

**Table of Contents***Income Before Income Taxes and Equity in Earnings of Affiliated Companies*

As a result of the above factors, consolidated income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 13.6%, or ¥29,800 million, to ¥249,609 million as compared to ¥219,809 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011.

*Income Taxes*

Consolidated income tax expense for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by ¥9,764 million to ¥74,470 million from ¥64,706 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. The actual effective tax rate for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased to 29.8% from 29.4% for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011.

The difference between the Japanese statutory tax rate of 40.8% and the actual effective tax rate of 29.8% was caused by (1) income of certain overseas subsidiaries being taxed at a rate lower than the Japanese statutory tax rate, which became less of a factor for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011 as income of subsidiaries being taxed at a higher rate in the U.S. increased while income of subsidiaries being taxed at a lower rate in China decreased, and (2) deferred tax benefits caused by the reduction of the valuation allowance for certain deferred tax assets. For additional information, see Note 15 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

*Income Before Equity in Earnings of Affiliated Companies*

As a result of the above factors, consolidated income before equity in earnings of affiliated companies for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by ¥20,036 million to ¥175,139 million as compared to ¥155,103 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011.

*Equity in Earnings of Affiliated Companies*

Consolidated equity in earnings of affiliated companies for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 decreased by ¥1,115 million to ¥1,609 million as compared to ¥2,724 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011, due primarily to decreased earnings recorded by affiliated companies held under the equity accounting method, such as Komatsu Cummins Engine Co., Ltd., L&T-Komatsu Limited.

*Net income*

As a result of the above factors, consolidated net income for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 12.0%, or ¥18,921 million, to ¥176,748 million as compared to ¥157,827 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011.

*Net Income Attributable to Noncontrolling Interests*

Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by ¥2,632 million to ¥9,707 million as compared to ¥7,075 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. Noncontrolling interests in income of consolidated subsidiaries increased mainly as a result of an increase in earnings recorded primarily by subsidiaries in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment, including Komatsu Marketing Support Australia Pty Ltd.

*Net Income Attributable to Komatsu Ltd.*

As a result of the above, consolidated net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 10.8%, or ¥16,289 million, to ¥167,041 million as compared to ¥150,752 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. Accordingly, basic net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. per share rose to ¥173.47 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 from ¥155.77 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. Diluted net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. per share rose to ¥173.32 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 from ¥155.66 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011.

**Table of Contents****Performance by Operating Segments**

The following table presents our segment net sales and segment profit for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2012 and 2011. In evaluating the financial data for each operating segment, Komatsu's management considers sales by the location of its external customers to be particularly helpful for the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment, its primary operating segment. Accordingly, in addition to providing performance information by operating segments, the below table and related discussion provide information regarding sales in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment broken down by geographic locations of Komatsu's external customer.

**Performance by Operating Segments**

	Millions of Yen Fiscal Years Ended March 31,		Percentage Change 2012 vs. 2011
	2012	2011	
<b>Net sales:</b>			
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment			
External Customers	¥ 1,739,348	¥ 1,615,689	7.7%
Japan	286,342	251,597	13.8%
The Americas	443,044	386,758	14.6%
Europe and CIS	200,404	164,007	22.2%
China	201,312	334,270	-39.8%
Asia (excluding Japan, China) and Oceania	481,277	374,577	28.5%
Middle East and Africa	126,969	104,480	21.5%
Intersegment	4,925	2,392	105.9%
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,744,273</b>	<b>1,618,081</b>	<b>7.8%</b>
Industrial Machinery and Others			
External Customers	242,415	227,438	6.6%
Intersegment	8,724	10,916	-20.1%
<b>Total</b>	<b>251,139</b>	<b>238,354</b>	<b>5.4%</b>
Elimination	(13,649)	(13,308)	-2.6%
<b>Consolidated Net Sales</b>	<b>¥ 1,981,763</b>	<b>¥ 1,843,127</b>	<b>7.5%</b>
<b>Segment Profit:</b>			
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	¥ 246,291	¥ 220,830	11.5%
Industrial Machinery and Others	16,779	20,965	-20.0%
<b>Total</b>	<b>263,070</b>	<b>241,795</b>	<b>8.8%</b>

Notes:

1) Transfers between segments are made at estimated arm's-length prices.  
*Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment*

*Net sales*

## Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Total net sales to external customers in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 7.7%, or ¥123,659 million, to ¥1,739,348 million as compared to ¥1,615,689 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. This increase in sales was due primarily to positive factors such as (1) the increase in demand for Komatsu's construction equipment in Japan, North America and other Strategic Markets (excluding China), which offset the decrease in demand for such equipment in China, and the increase in demand for new mining equipment as well as increased sales of mining parts and services (which collectively increased net sales in this operating segment by approximately ¥155.2 billion) and (2) the realization of product sales at higher prices (which increased net sales in this operating segment by approximately ¥34.7 billion). Such factors offset unfavorable changes in foreign exchange rates as the Japanese yen strengthened sharply against the U.S. dollar, Euro and Renminbi (which decreased net sales in this operating segment by approximately ¥64.0 billion).

**Table of Contents**

Net sales to external customers in Japan for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 13.8%, or ¥34,745 million, to ¥286,342 million as compared to ¥251,597 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. This increase was due primarily to an increase in demand for construction equipment, particularly from rental companies using such equipment for reconstruction of the regions damaged by the earthquake and subsequent tsunami. To support the reconstruction efforts, Komatsu enhanced its sales and service operation by opening the Tohoku Service Center of the Tohoku Operation Department and the Miyagi Center of the Komatsu Safety Training Center Ltd. In addition, Komatsu worked to quickly restore the operations of its branches that were destroyed or damaged in the Tohoku area.

Net sales to external customers in the Americas for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 14.6%, or ¥56,286 million, to ¥443,044 million as compared to ¥386,758 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. While the housing sector in North America still did not show any notable signs of recovery, demand for construction and mining equipment in North America remained strong in the rental, energy development and mining industries. Demand for new construction and utility equipment by equipment rental companies continued to increase as such companies replaced some of their older equipment with newer equipment. The increase in energy development such as shale gas fracking also contributed to the increase in demand for construction equipment. In addition, to capture the strong demand in North America, Komatsu worked to increase its sales of new emission standards-compliant models, which were launched during Komatsu's first fiscal quarter (quarter ended June 30, 2011), as well as hybrid hydraulic excavators. In particular, Komatsu reinforced its sales promotion activities in respect of this equipment in North America, targeting primarily heavy-use customers who desire and are sensitive to fuel efficiency. In Latin America, demand for mining equipment was strong, mainly in Chile, against the backdrop of increasing commodity prices.

Net sales to external customers in Europe and CIS for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 22.2%, or ¥36,397 million, to ¥200,404 million as compared to ¥164,007 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. In Europe, while concerns over an economic slowdown continued against the backdrop of fiscal problems, demand for construction equipment remained steady mainly in major markets such as Germany and France during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. Komatsu's efforts to expand sales of parts by teaming up with local distributors and launch new emission standards-compliant models and hybrid hydraulic excavators in this area also contributed to the improved sales in Europe as compared to the previous fiscal year. In CIS, demand for Komatsu equipment remained firm, centering on those equipment in the mining sector, such as coal, gold and mines, as well as the energy sector, such as oil and natural gas.

Net sales to external customers in China for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 decreased by 39.8%, or ¥132,958 million, to ¥201,312 million as compared to ¥334,270 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. This decrease was due primarily to the implementation of credit squeeze measures by the Chinese government, which decreased demand especially in the civil engineering industry as the commencement of new construction projects was delayed due to the lack of funding.

Net sales to external customers in Asia (excluding Japan and China) and Oceania for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 28.5%, or ¥106,700 million, to ¥481,277 million as compared to ¥374,577 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. Demand for mining equipment continued to expand in Indonesia, the largest market for Komatsu products in Southeast Asia, while demand for construction equipment continued to remain strong in the civil engineering, agriculture and forestry sectors in that country as well. Favorable economic conditions in Indonesia helped fuel the need for steady coal supplies in response to domestic electricity demand. Consequently, the demand for Komatsu's mining equipment grew in light of the increased domestic coal production in Indonesia. Demand for construction equipment also increased steadily in India, Malaysia and other countries in Asia. In Australia, demand for Komatsu equipment remained strong, especially with respect to mining equipment against the backdrop of increasing commodity prices. In November 2011, Komatsu and Rio Tinto entered into a Memorandum of Understanding, agreeing to operate over 150 driverless dump trucks in iron ore mines in Australia by the end of 2015. Komatsu and Rio Tinto are currently working together to ensure the success of this project. For example, Komatsu established a support center for this project in Perth in December 2011.

Net sales to external customers in the Middle East and Africa for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 21.5%, or ¥22,489 million, to ¥126,969 million as compared to ¥104,480 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. While political and social conditions remained unstable in some countries in this region, demand for equipment increased, especially for use in mines in Africa. In South Africa, where the market for equipment used in mines and infrastructure developments continued to expand, Komatsu's concerted efforts to expand sales of KOMTRAX (Komatsu Machine Tracking System) installed construction equipment contributed to the increase in sales. In other African countries, Komatsu strengthened its sales and product support operations by increasing the number of training centers and expanding on-the-job training programs for distributor's service engineers by dispatching personnel that have an in-depth understanding of the equipment to such distributors, which also contributed to an increase in sales in this region.

**Table of Contents***Segment Profit*

Segment profit for the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 11.5%, or ¥25,461 million, to ¥246,291 million from ¥220,830 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. Factors that contributed to this increase include (1) increased sales (which increased segment profit by approximately ¥39.8 billion) and (2) the realization of sales at higher prices (which increased segment profit by approximately ¥34.7 billion). Such factors were partially offset by (1) unfavorable changes in foreign exchange rates as the Japanese yen strengthened sharply against the U.S. dollar, Euro and Renminbi (which decreased segment profit by approximately ¥34.2 billion) and (2) increased manufacturing costs in response to increased steel prices (which increased segment profit by approximately ¥3.0 billion).

*Industrial Machinery and Others**Net Sales*

Total net sales to external customers in the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 increased by 6.6%, or ¥14,977 million, to ¥242,415 million as compared to ¥227,438 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. Demand for wire saws declined from the previous fiscal year in light of the Chinese government's credit squeeze measure and the reduction of government subsidies related to solar energy use in Europe, both of which contributed to the decrease in net sales in this operating segment. The decrease in solar cell prices also contributed to such decreased net sales in wire saws as Komatsu's customers that manufacture solar cells reduced their capital investments in light of the weak business environment. Despite such decrease in wire saw sales, demand for presses and machine tools increased from the previous fiscal year, reflecting the recovery of capital investments by the automobile manufacturing industry, and contributed to the increase in net sales of the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment. The addition of Gigaphoton Inc. as a consolidated subsidiary during the fiscal year also contributed to the increase in net sales of the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment.

*Segment Profit*

Segment profit for the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 decreased by 20.0%, or ¥4,186 million, to ¥16,779 million from ¥20,965 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011. This decrease was due primarily to the decrease in demand for higher-margin wire saws.

**B. Liquidity and Capital Resources***Cash Flow*

Set forth below is the condensed consolidated statements of cash flows information for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011.

**Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows Information**

	Millions of yen		
	Fiscal Years Ended March 31,		
	2013	2012	2011
Net cash provided by operating activities	¥ 214,045	¥ 105,608	¥ 150,402
Net cash used in investing activities	(131,397)	(124,539)	(88,509)
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	(71,814)	18,781	(56,365)
Effect of exchange rate change on cash and cash equivalents	(293)	(995)	(3,733)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	10,541	(1,145)	1,795
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of year	83,079	84,224	82,429
Cash and cash equivalents, end of year	¥ 93,620	¥ 83,079	¥ 84,224





---

**Table of Contents**

Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2013

Despite the fact that net income decreased from the previous fiscal year as Komatsu recognized a decrease in net sales and therefore a decrease in cash collected from customers in the current fiscal year, net cash provided by operating activities amounted to ¥214,045 million, an increase of ¥108,437 million from ¥105,608 million for the previous fiscal year. This result is mainly due to efforts made to decrease inventory levels by ¥42,040 million as compared with an increase of ¥137,354 million for the previous fiscal year. Inventory adjustments were made mainly in accordance with the weak demands in some Strategic Markets, such as China and Indonesia. The increase in net cash provided by operating activities was partially offset by decrease in advances received by ¥16,856 million as compared to an increase of ¥18,352 million for the previous fiscal year.

Net cash used in investing activities totaled ¥131,397 million, an increase of ¥6,858 million from ¥124,539 million for the previous fiscal year, mainly due to the purchase of fixed assets as well as acquisitions of subsidiary shares. Komatsu used additional cash to purchase fixed assets, which totaled ¥142,992 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, mainly to expand production capacity in light of a projected demand increase for its equipment and to strengthen its sales and service operations in the Strategic Markets. The acquisition of shares of subsidiaries included the acquisition of Log Max AB and Log Max, Inc., a Swedish forest machinery attachment manufacturer and its U.S. sales company.

Because of the redistribution of profits to shareholders during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 in the form of dividend payments and the repayment of interest-bearing debt, net cash used in financing activities amounted to ¥71,814 million.

Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2012

Despite the fact that net income increased from the previous fiscal year as Komatsu recognized an increase in net sales (and increased its cash collections), net cash provided by operating activities amounted to ¥105,608 million, a decrease of ¥44,794 million from ¥150,402 million for the previous fiscal year, mainly due to the increased purchase of a number of components used in the production of equipment in response to greater demand, especially demand for mining equipment. In addition, the increase in payment for income tax, which was due to the increase in taxable income as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011, also contributed to the decrease in net cash provided by operating activities. The decrease in net cash provided by operating activities was partially offset by the increase in cash collections resulting from increased sales as compared to the previous fiscal year and an advance payment received from a customer in the mining business to secure specific purchase orders in the amount of ¥14,719 million. The advance payment from the customer will be recorded as a sale when the corresponding revenue is recognized in the subsequent years.

Net cash used in investing activities totaled ¥124,539 million, an increase of ¥36,030 million from ¥88,509 million for the previous fiscal year, mainly due to the purchase of fixed assets as well as acquisitions of subsidiary shares and minority equity stakes in companies. The purchase of fixed assets, which totaled ¥126,090 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012, increased mainly due to the need to expand production capacity in response to increased demand for its equipment and to strengthen its sales and service operations in the Strategic Markets. The acquisition of shares of subsidiaries included the acquisition of an additional 50% equity stake in Gigaphoton Inc. for ¥7,500 million, as a result of which Gigaphoton Inc. became a consolidated subsidiary of the Company.

While cash was used for the redistribution of profits to shareholders during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 in the form of dividend payments and the repurchase of Komatsu's own shares for retirement, net cash provided by financing activities amounted to ¥18,781 million due to long-term debt financing and an increase in short-term debt.

## **Table of Contents**

### *Capital Investment*

Komatsu's management defines "Capital Investment" as costs relating to the purchase of property, plant and equipment, including properties under capital leases on an accrual basis, which reflects the effect of timing differences between acquisition dates and payment dates. Komatsu's management uses this financial indicator to manage its capital investment and believes that this indicator is useful to investors in that this indicator presents accrual based capital investment in addition to the cash based capital expenditures provided in the consolidated statements of cash flows.

In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, Komatsu made capital investments in the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment to expand its production capacity in light of a projected increase in demand for its equipment, and to strengthen its sales and service operations in the Strategic Markets. For example, in anticipation of mid- to long-range market growth, Komatsu expanded production capacities of Komatsu (Shandong) Construction Machinery Corp. in China. In the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment, Komatsu made capital investments to renovate its production facilities. As a result, Komatsu's capital investment on a consolidated basis for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 was ¥136,962 million, an increase of ¥14,924 million from the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. Komatsu plans to make investments totaling ¥137,000 million for the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014. For information about Komatsu's capital investment plans for the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014, see Item 4.D. Property, Plants and Equipment.

### *Source of Funds and Liquidity Management*

Komatsu's principal capital resources policy is to maintain sufficient capital resources to be able to respond promptly to future capital needs in connection with its operations and to maintain an appropriate level of liquidity. Consistent with this policy, Komatsu has secured various sources of funding, such as loans, corporate bonds, notes and lines of credit. Komatsu expects to use cash generated from its operations and funds procured through such external sources to satisfy future capital expenditures and working capital needs. In addition, in order to improve the efficiency and effectiveness of its cash management, Komatsu's overseas subsidiaries participate in a global cash pooling arrangement with a single financial institution, which is used to fund their liquidity needs. Participating overseas subsidiaries are allowed to withdraw cash from this financial institution based upon the aggregate cash deposits made to such financial institution. This arrangement contains specific provisions for the right to offset positive and negative cash balances on a global basis. Komatsu's consolidated Balance Sheet as of March 31, 2013 reflects cash net of withdrawals of ¥57,568 million in this global cash pooling arrangement.

Transfer of funds from subsidiaries in the form of cash dividends, loans or advances are restricted by applicable local regulations of countries in which some of Komatsu's subsidiaries are located. Nonetheless, Komatsu does not expect these restrictions to have a significant impact on its ability to meet its cash obligations.

Komatsu's short-term funding needs have been met mainly by cash flows from its operating activities, as well as by bank loans and the issuance of commercial paper.

As of March 31, 2013, certain consolidated subsidiaries of the Company maintained committed credit line agreements totaling ¥49,997 million with financial institutions to secure liquidity. As of March 31, 2013, approximately ¥14,738 million was available to be used under such credit line agreements, which contain customary covenants. Komatsu is not subject to any covenants limiting its ability to incur additional indebtedness. In addition, the Company has a ¥150,000 million commercial paper program, ¥109,000 million of which was unused as of March 31, 2013. The amount of capital raised through its commercial paper program has depended upon Komatsu's financial needs, investor demand and market conditions, as well as the ratings outlook for Komatsu.

To fulfill Komatsu's medium- to long-term funding needs, the Company has established a bond program as well as a Euro Medium Term Note (EMTN) program. As discussed below, in addition to the Company, some of its subsidiaries may also issue EMTNs under the EMTN program. In November 2012, the Company's bond program was renewed such that it could issue up to ¥100,000 million of variable-term bonds within a two year period. Under this renewed program, the Company has issued ¥30,000 million of bonds as of March 31, 2013 and ¥70,000 million remains unused. As of March 31, 2013, the Company also has ¥120,000 million aggregate principal amount of bonds outstanding, ¥90,000 million of which was issued under the bond program prior to its 2012 renewal. As for EMTNs, the Company, Komatsu Finance America Inc. and Komatsu Capital Europe S.A. have established a U.S.\$1.2 billion EMTN program. Any of these three issuer entities can issue notes in various currencies under the EMTN program. The principal amount of notes outstanding as of March 31, 2013 under the EMTN program was ¥80,734 million.

## **Table of Contents**

For additional information about the interest rate structure and maturity dates for these borrowings, see Note 11 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

### *Fiscal 2013 Financial Position*

Komatsu's short-term debt as of March 31, 2013, which primarily consisted of bank loans, decreased by ¥10,668 million to ¥205,156 million from March 31, 2012. Such short-term debt was used as working capital.

Komatsu's long-term debt, including debt with maturity dates on or before March 31, 2014, increased by ¥42,631 million to ¥474,607 million in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. As of March 31, 2013, Komatsu's long-term debt excluding market value adjustment, consisted of (1) ¥263,897 million in loans from banks, insurance companies and other financial institutions, (2) ¥120,000 million in unsecured bonds, (3) ¥80,734 million in EMTNs and (4) ¥9,976 million in capital lease obligations. Such long-term debt was used primarily for capital expenditures and long-term working capital needs. For information about the interest rate structure and maturity dates for these borrowings, see Note 11 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

As a result, Komatsu's interest-bearing debt as of March 31, 2013, including its capital lease obligations, increased by ¥31,963 million to ¥679,763 million as compared to March 31, 2012. Net interest-bearing debt after deducting cash and deposits also increased by ¥22,112 million to ¥585,926 million in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. As a result, Komatsu's net debt-to-equity ratio as of March 31, 2013 was 0.49 to 1, compared to 0.56 to 1 as of March 31, 2012.

At March 31, 2013, Komatsu's total working capital increased by ¥127,818 million to ¥664,480 million. The current ratio, which is calculated by dividing current assets by current liabilities, as of March 31, 2013, was 1.80 to 1, compared to 1.62 to 1 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. In management's opinion, the working capital is sufficient for Komatsu's present requirements.

Based on anticipated cash flows from its operating activities, the available sources of funds and the level of its current ratio (which is calculated by dividing current assets by current liabilities), Komatsu believes that it has sufficient means to satisfy its liquidity needs and future obligations.

As of March 31, 2013, Komatsu's total cash and cash equivalents was ¥93,620 million. Out of total cash and cash equivalents, ¥71,683 million was held outside of Japan in various overseas subsidiaries as of March 31, 2013. Under current tax laws and regulations, if cash and cash equivalents associated with the overseas subsidiaries' undistributed earnings were to be repatriated in the form of dividends or deemed distributions to Komatsu, Komatsu would be subject to additional Japanese income taxes and foreign withholding taxes in certain countries. However, Komatsu sets aside a part of its cash and cash equivalents in order to invest in its overseas operations. As of March 31, 2013, Komatsu plans to re-invest approximately half of its total cash and cash equivalent held outside of Japan in its overseas operations.

### *Credit Ratings*

The Company obtains credit ratings from three rating agencies: Standard and Poor's Ratings Services (S&P), Moody's Investors Service, Inc. (Moody's) and Rating and Investment Information, Inc. (R&I). As of March 31, 2013, the Company's issuer ratings were as follows:

S&P: A (long-term)

Moody's: A2 (long-term)

R&I: AA- (long-term), a-1+ (short-term)

**Table of Contents****C. Research and Development, Patents and Licenses, etc.**

Komatsu is actively engaged in research and development activities for new technologies, new products and new services consistent with its commitment to provide Quality and Reliability. Komatsu's research and development activities are conducted by various groups within Komatsu. With respect to the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment operating segment, the Research Division and the Development Division as well as development centers that focus on construction, mining and utility equipment are involved in research and development activities. The Industrial Machinery Division and the technology departments of Komatsu's subsidiaries and affiliates are responsible for research and development activities relating to the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment.

The following table presents Komatsu's research and development expenses for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011. Research and development expenses are recognized when incurred.

<b>R&amp;D expenses</b>	<b>Millions of yen</b>		
	<b>Fiscal Years Ended March 31,</b>		
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>	<b>2011</b>
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	<b>¥ 53,159</b>	¥ 42,960	¥ 40,241
Industrial Machinery and Others	<b>7,629</b>	11,883	8,764
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 60,788</b>	¥ 54,843	¥ 49,005

The objectives of the research and development activities by operating segment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 are described below.

**(1) Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment**

In order to develop construction, mining and utility equipment that can be used in various parts of the world, Komatsu has established research and development centers in Japan and overseas, and has encouraged joint research and development programs as well as personnel exchanges. With the goal of assisting its customers to improve their productivity, Komatsu's medium- and long-term research and development objectives are (1) to make advancements in the use of ICT and (2) to increase the environmental friendliness of its products.

Komatsu has been engaged in the research and development of ICT, including remote management technology (which enables remote management of equipment by obtaining information regarding machine locations, operating conditions and vehicle health using state-of-the-art remote sensing and telecommunication technologies), control technology and intelligent machine technology (which, for example, provide information as to when, for how long and in what mode the equipment was operated, whether the engine should be shut down based on the time it has been idle, and the machine location, digging position and grading height using a GPS based system, such that the operators of equipment with such technology can complete jobs more efficiently, economically and accurately). Equipment with control systems and management systems using these technologies have been rapidly penetrating the construction, mining and utility equipment market. Komatsu is striving to achieve the complete automation of its equipment and is making advances to actively use ICT in its construction, mining and utility equipment taking into consideration its customers' needs and preferences.

Komatsu has also made advances in research and development relating to energy conservation, component recycling and reuse, and the evaluation of environmental loads through lifecycle assessment techniques based on the belief that it is possible to reduce environmental burdens while achieving economic efficiency. In particular, Komatsu has placed special emphasis on research and development activities relating to technologies that reduce fuel consumption, which are conducive to both the environment (by reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions) and the economy (by decreasing fuel expenses). One type of equipment that reflects these R&D efforts to date is Komatsu's hybrid hydraulic excavators, which were first introduced in Japan, and later in China, North America, Europe, Central/South Americas, Southeast Asia and Oceania. In addition, construction equipment with clean diesel engines that meet the stringent emission standards (EPA Tier 4 Interim and EU Stage IIIB), which were phased in starting in 2011, are another example of Komatsu's R&D efforts to date. These pieces of construction equipment have been released to the market one after another. Komatsu also has expanded its line-up of mini-construction equipment, which meet the emission standards enforced in China. Komatsu has developed and introduced forklift trucks, which meet the emission standards in Japan. Komatsu is continuously seeking to develop new technology to meet stricter exhaust gas emission standards that are to become effective in the future. In addition, Komatsu is working to make further improvements to the working conditions faced by machine operators by enhancing safety measures and reducing the noise and vibration levels of its machines.



---

**Table of Contents**

(2) Industrial Machinery and Others

Research and development in the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment is principally conducted in the fields of large presses and fabricating machinery (which is conducted by Komatsu Industries Corporation), machine tools (which is conducted by Komatsu NTC Ltd.) and other industrial machinery (which is conducted by KELK Ltd. and Gigaphoton Inc.).

In the category of large-sized presses, Komatsu Industries Corporation has developed a system expansion model, H4F2000, of the AC servo press in response to customers' calls for improvement in terms of productivity and formability. At the same time, Komatsu Industries Corporation developed the AC servo die cushions of 400 tons and introduced it to the market.

In the category of fabricating machinery, Komatsu Industries Corporation has developed a new plasma cutting machine, TFP3051LL, which is expected to have twice the useful life of a conventional machine and has improved cutting quality compared to earlier models.

With respect to machine tools, Komatsu NTC Ltd. started the development of new crankshaft milling machines during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 and is currently selling N30Hi, a crankshaft milling machine that consumes less energy than conventional models, mainly to the automobile parts machining industries. With respect to wire saws, model PV500D, which is exclusively used to cut diamonds, went on sale for the solar cell industry during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 and a new model, SP300Di, has been developed to cut sapphire, which is used as a base material for LED lights.

In terms of other products, KELK Ltd. has been engaged in the research and development of high-performance temperature control equipment, high-performance thermoelectric heat exchange units, micro thermo-modules for use in optical communications and thermoelectric power generation modules. Gigaphoton Inc. has been engaged in the research and development to improve ArF excimer laser for immersion lithography tools and EUV light source for the next generation lithography tools.

**D. Trend Information**

Komatsu expects that demand in the construction and utility equipment businesses will increase especially in North America and Japan. In North America, demand for new construction and utility equipment from rental companies is expected to increase steadily because of the recovery of the housing sector and the rental and energy development industries in the U.S. Demand for new equipment from rental companies is also expected to increase in Japan because these companies will continue to require additional new equipment for the reconstruction of the regions affected by the Great East Japan Earthquake and subsequent tsunami. In light of the increase in sales of construction equipment in North America, Komatsu expects that its retail finance business will improve as well.

On the other hand, Komatsu does not expect that demand for mining equipment and related parts and services will increase in the short-term as mining customers are likely to continue refraining from new investments in light of the decrease in the price of materials, especially coal. However, Komatsu believes demand for mining equipment will recover in the medium-term since mineral resource output and demand has not decreased. Accordingly, demand for new mining equipment is expected to improve in the medium-term. Komatsu also expects that its parts sales will increase as the number of Komatsu's mining equipment in operation increases since a certain portion of such equipment will require overhauled.

---

## **Table of Contents**

With respect to the industrial machinery and others business, Komatsu expects that demand for presses and machine tools will remain steady. This is because demand for automobiles are expected to expand on a worldwide basis and automobile manufacturers are expected to make capital investments to keep up with such demand. Sales of wire saws for use in slicing silicon ingots are likely to remain sluggish because of the slow-down of new investment in solar power generation.

Komatsu has developed a new three-year (FY2013-2015) mid-range management plan to be completed by the fiscal year ending March 31, 2016. As part of the new mid-range management plan, Komatsu will focus its efforts on the following three focused efforts. (1) Growth strategies based on innovation, (2) Growth strategies of existing businesses, and (3) Structural reforms designed to reinforce the business foundation.

Under these focused activities, Komatsu will continue to develop and promote its next-generation productions by utilizing its accumulated expertise and cutting-age ICT (Information and Communication Technology). In FY2013, Komatsu is going to launch medium-sized D61EXi/PXi bulldozers and medium-sized PC210LCi hydraulic excavators initially in the United States and Europe, respectively.

Starting in 2014, new emission control standards (e.g., Tier 4 Final in the United States) will be introduced in the United States, Europe and Japan, which require further reduction of NOx (nitrogen oxides) and PM (particulate matter) emissions. Komatsu will integrate its in-house development and production strengths for engines, hydraulic units, control systems and so forth with leading-edge technologies, as Komatsu continues to develop new products designed to meet the new standards in FY2013, while working for a smooth market introduction.

Komatsu also will put effort on expanding its parts sales. In FY2013, KOMTRAX Parts service will be launched that will enable Komatsu to learn about the conditions of parts and their replacement record.

Komatsu also plans to renovate its factories so that they are equipped with leading-edge energy-saving functions starting in the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014. The Awazu Plant in Ishikawa Prefecture, Japan is expected to be the first plant to go through the renovation process. Through these renovations, Komatsu expects to achieve production efficiency.

In the light of such conditions, Komatsu's projection for the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014 is an increase in net sales and operating income of 8.8% (to ¥2,050.0 billion) and 44.1% (to ¥305.0 billion), respectively, as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. Operating income ratio is projected to increase by 3.7 percentage points to 14.9%. These projections are based on the estimate that there will be a positive impact on operating income of approximately ¥70.0 billion as compared with the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 under the assumption that the foreign exchange rates will be ¥95, ¥123 and ¥15.3 for each of one U.S. dollar, Euro, and Renminbi, respectively.

The Company and some of its consolidated subsidiaries adopt the declining balance method for the depreciation of property, plant and equipment, and plan to change it to the straight-line method beginning April 1, 2013. Komatsu believes that the straight-line method should better reflect the future usage of the property, plant and equipment. The effect of the change in depreciation is recognized prospectively as a change in accounting estimate. This effect is estimated to result in a decrease of depreciation expense by approximately ¥10.0 billion for the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014.

### **E. Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

As of March 31, 2013, Komatsu had ¥406 million of contingent liabilities with financial institutions for discounted and transferred receivables on a recourse basis.

Komatsu provides guarantees to third parties in connection with loans borrowed by its employees and affiliated companies, customers and other companies. These guarantees relate mainly to housing loans extended to Komatsu's employees. The guarantees that support loans borrowed by Komatsu's affiliated companies, customers and other companies are issued to enhance the creditworthiness of these affiliated companies, customers and other companies.



**Table of Contents**

For each guarantee issued, Komatsu is required to perform under such guarantee if the borrower defaults on a payment required to be made by the applicable contract's terms. The contract terms range from 10 years to 30 years in the case of employees' housing loans, and from 1 year to 11 years in the case of loans borrowed by Komatsu's affiliated companies, customers and other companies. The maximum aggregate amount of undiscounted payments Komatsu would have had to make in the event that a payment default were to occur for all of these loans was ¥94,776 million as of March 31, 2013. The fair value of the liabilities recognized for Komatsu's obligations as guarantor under these guarantees as of March 31, 2013 were believed to be insignificant by Komatsu's management. Some of these guarantees were secured by collateral or insurance issued to the Company.

Komatsu's management believes that losses from these contingent liabilities, if any, would not have a material effect on the consolidated financial statements of Komatsu.

**F. Tabular Disclosure of Contractual Obligations**

The following tables set forth Komatsu's contractual obligations as of March 31, 2013.

	Millions of yen				
	Total	Cash payments due by period			
		Less than 1 year	1-3 years	3-5 years	More than 5 years
Short-term debt obligations	¥ 205,156	¥ 205,156	¥	¥	¥
Long-term debt obligations (excluding capital lease obligations)	463,478	126,007	226,862	110,340	269
Capital (Finance) lease obligations	9,976	4,473	4,645	504	354
Operating lease obligations	12,982	4,300	5,201	1,923	1,558
Interest on interest bearing debt (including capital lease obligations)	17,336	10,958	5,077	1,266	35
Pension and other post retirement obligations	5,082	5,082			
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 714,010</b>	<b>¥ 355,976</b>	<b>¥ 241,785</b>	<b>¥ 114,033</b>	<b>¥ 2,216</b>

Long-term debt obligations exclude market value adjustments of ¥1,153 million.

Interest on interest-bearing debt is based on rates in effect as of March 31, 2013.

Pension and other post retirement obligations reflect contributions expected to be made during the year ending March 31, 2014 only, as the amounts of funding obligations beyond the next year are not yet determinable.

Obligations related to derivative activities are summarized in Foreign Exchange Risk and Interest Rate Risk under Item 11. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk.

**G. Safe Harbor**

Any information disclosed under Item 5.E. Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements and Item 5.F. Tabular Disclosure of Contractual Obligations that is not historical in nature is deemed to be a forward-looking statement. See Cautionary Statement with respect to forward-looking statements for more information.

**Table of Contents****Item 6. Directors, Senior Management and Employees****A. Directors and Senior Management**

Set forth below are the Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members of the Company, their date of birth, current position with the Company, prior positions, the dates when they assumed such positions and other principal business activities performed outside the Company as of June 19, 2013. The Company's senior management is comprised of all of the directors (excluding outside directors) listed below.

**Board of Directors****Kunio Noji**

Date of Birth:	Nov. 17, 1946
Director Since:	Jun. 1997 to Jun. 1999; Jun. 2001 to present
Current Positions:	Chairman of the Board and Representative Director (since Apr. 2013)

**Prior Positions:**

4/1969	Joined the Company
	Field Testing Department, Technical Division
6/1993	General Manager of Production Control Department, Technical Division in Construction Equipment Division
2/1995	Plant Manager of Chattanooga Manufacturing Operation, Komatsu Dresser Company (now, Komatsu America Corp.)
	(until 2/1997)
3/1997	President of Information Systems Division
6/1997	Took office as Director
6/1999	Resigned as Director, took office as Executive Officer
4/2000	President of Production Division
6/2000	Took office as Senior Executive Officer
6/2001	Took office as Managing Director and Senior Executive Officer
4/2003	Took office as Director and Senior Executive Officer
	President of Construction & Mining Equipment Marketing Division
6/2007	Took office as President and Representative Director, and CEO
4/2013	Took office as Chairman of the Board and Representative Director (current)

**Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:**

Outside Director of Ricoh Company, Ltd.

**Table of Contents****Tetsuji Ohashi\***

Date of Birth:	Mar. 23, 1954
Director Since:	Jun. 2009
Current Positions:	President and Representative Director, and CEO (since Apr. 2013)

## Prior Positions:

4/1977	Joined the Company
	Product Control Section, Planning & Coordination Department of Awazu Plant
6/1982	Graduate School, Stanford University, USA
	(until 6/1984)
10/1998	General Manager of Planning & Cooperation Department of Awazu Plant, Production Division
10/2001	Plant Manager of Moka Plant, Production Division
1/2004	President and COO of Komatsu America Corp. (until 3/2007)
4/2007	Took office as Executive Officer
	President of Production Division
4/2008	Took office as Senior Executive Officer
6/2009	Took office as Director and Senior Executive Officer
4/2012	Took office as Director and Senior Executive Officer
4/2013	President and Representative Director, and CEO (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

None

**Mikio Fujitsuka\***

Date of Birth:	Mar. 13, 1955
Director Since:	Jun. 2011
Current Positions:	CFO (since Apr. 2011) Supervising Investor Relations (since Apr. 2011)

## Prior Positions:

4/1977	Joined the Company
	Accounting Section, Administration Department of Awazu Plant
7/1988	Komatsu Australia Pty., Ltd. (until 2/1994)
6/2001	General Manager of Corporate Controlling Department
4/2005	Took office as Executive Officer
4/2008	President of Global Retail Finance Business Division and
	President and Representative Director of Komatsu Business Support Ltd.
2/2009	General Manager of Corporate Planning Division and President of Global Retail Finance Business Division
4/2010	Took office as Senior Executive Officer
4/2011	CFO (current)
6/2011	Took office as Director and Senior Executive Officer
4/2013	Took office as Director and Senior Executive Officer (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

None



**Table of Contents****Fujitoshi Takamura\***

Date of Birth:	Dec. 21, 1954
Director Since:	Jun. 2011
Current Positions:	President of Development Division (since Apr. 2010) Supervising Research (since Apr. 2011)

## Prior Positions:

4/1977	Joined the Company Construction Equipment Technical Center of Osaka Plant
6/1982	Brown University, USA (until 6/1984)
4/2004	General Manager of Construction Equipment Technical Center 1, Development Division
4/2006	Took office as Executive Officer
4/2010	Took office as Senior Executive Officer President of Development Division (current)
6/2011	Took office as Director and Senior Executive Officer
4/2013	Took office as Director and Senior Executive Officer (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

None

**Hisashi Shinozuka\***

Date of Birth:	Jul. 16, 1954
Director Since:	Jun. 2013
Current Positions:	President of Construction Equipment Marketing Division (since Apr. 2012)

## Prior Positions:

4/1978	Joined the Company Product Control Section, Planning & Coordination Department of Oyama Plant
6/1981	National Autonomous University of Mexico, Mexico (until 5/1982)
10/1991	General Manager of Istanbul Office, International Division (until 10/1995)
7/1997	Vice President of Komatsu Latin-America Corp. (until 10/2002)
5/2005	General Manager of The Americas & European Business, Construction & Mining Equipment Marketing Division
4/2007	President and COO of Komatsu America Corp.
4/2011	Took office with status equivalent to a Senior Executive Officer
4/2012	Took office as Senior Executive Officer (current) President of Construction Equipment Marketing Division (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

None

**Table of Contents****Kazunori Kuromoto\***

Date of Birth:	May. 23, 1955
Director Since:	Jun. 2013
Current Positions:	President of ICT Business Division (since Apr. 2012) President of Global Mining Business Division (since Apr. 2013)

## Prior Positions:

4/1980	Joined the Company Technical Center of Awazu Plant
6/1985	Graduate School, University of California, Los Angeles, USA (until 6/1987)
4/2006	General Manager of Construction Equipment Electronics, Development Division
4/2007	Took office as Executive Officer
4/2008	President of AHS Business, Construction & Mining Equipment Marketing Division
4/2009	President of IT Construction Business, Construction & Mining Equipment Marketing Division
4/2012	Took office as Senior Executive Officer (current) President of ICT Business Division (current)
4/2013	President of Global Mining Business Division (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

None

**Masanao Mori\***

Date of Birth:	Feb. 8, 1958
Director Since:	Jun. 2013
Current Positions:	General Manager of Human Resources Department (since Apr. 2008) Supervising Education and Safety & Health Care (since Apr. 2012)

## Prior Positions:

4/1981	Joined the Company Labor Section, Human Resources Department
4/2004	General Manager of General Affairs Department, Engines & Hydraulics Business Division
4/2008	General Manager of Human Resources Department (current)
4/2009	Took office as Executive Officer
4/2013	Took office as Senior Executive Officer (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

None

**Table of Contents****Kensuke Hotta**

Date of Birth:	Oct. 12, 1938
Director Since:	Jun. 2008
Current Position:	Outside Director (since Jun. 2008)

## Positions Outside the Company:

4/1962	Joined The Sumitomo Bank, Ltd. (now Sumitomo Mitsui Banking Corporation, hereinafter the Bank )
6/1987	Took office as Director of the Bank
10/1990	Took office as Managing Director of the Bank
10/1992	Took office as Senior Managing Director and Representative Director of the Bank
6/1997	Took office as Deputy President and Representative Director of the Bank
11/2000	Retired from the Bank
1/2001	Took office as Chairman of Morgan Stanley Japan Limited
4/2006	Took office as Chairman and Representative Director of Morgan Stanley Japan Securities Co., Ltd. (now Morgan Stanley MUFG Securities Co., Ltd.)
10/2007	Took office as Chairman and Representative Director of Hotta Partners Inc. (current)
12/2007	Took office as Senior Advisor of Morgan Stanley Japan Securities Co., Ltd.
6/2008	Took office as Director of the Company (current)
12/2008	Took office as Chairman and Representative Director of Greenhill & Co. Japan Ltd. (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

Chairman and Representative Director of Greenhill & Co. Japan Ltd.

Chairman and Representative Director of Hotta Partners Inc.

Outside Audit & Supervisory Board member of SEIREN CO., LTD

Outside Director of HIROSE ELECTRIC CO., LTD.

**Noriaki Kano**

Date of Birth:	Apr. 29, 1940
Director Since:	Jun. 2008
Current Position:	Outside Director (since Jun. 2008)

## Positions Outside the Company:

10/1982	Took office as Professor at Faculty of Engineering, Tokyo University of Science
6/2006	Took office as Professor Emeritus at Tokyo University of Science (current)
6/2008	Took office as Director of the Company (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

Professor Emeritus at Tokyo University of Science

**Table of Contents****Kouichi Ikeda**

Date of Birth:	Apr. 21, 1940
Director Since:	Jun. 2010
Current Position:	Outside Director (since Jun. 2010)

## Positions Outside the Company:

4/1963	Joined Asahi Breweries, Ltd. (now Asahi Group Holdings, Ltd.)
3/1996	Took office as Director of Asahi Breweries, Ltd.
3/1997	Took office as Managing Director of Asahi Breweries, Ltd.
3/1999	Took office as Senior Managing Director of Asahi Breweries, Ltd.
3/2000	Took office as Senior Managing Executive Officer of Asahi Breweries, Ltd.
3/2001	Took office as Senior Managing Director and Senior Managing Executive Officer of Asahi Breweries, Ltd.
1/2002	Took office as President and COO of Asahi Breweries, Ltd.
3/2006	Took office as Chairman of the Board and CEO of Asahi Breweries, Ltd.
3/2010	Took office as Corporate Advisor of Asahi Breweries, Ltd.
6/2010	Took office as Director of the Company (current)
7/2011	Took office as Corporate Advisor of Asahi Group Holdings, Ltd. (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

Corporate Advisor of Asahi Group Holdings, Ltd.
Outside Audit & Supervisory Board member of Sumitomo Chemical Company, Limited
Outside Director of Watabe Wedding Corporation



**Table of Contents****Audit & Supervisory Board Members****Makoto Morimoto**

Date of Birth:	Jul. 18, 1954
Audit & Supervisory Board Member Since:	Jun. 2012
Current Positions:	Audit & Supervisory Board Member (Full Time) (since Jun. 2012)

## Prior Positions:

4/1977	Joined the Company
	Accounting Section, Administration Department of Osaka Plant
11/1992	PT Komatsu Indonesia (until 10/1996)
7/1998	Komatsu Mining Systems, Inc. (until 3/2002)
4/2002	Komatsu America Corp. (until 1/2004)
4/2004	General Manager of Corporate Accounting Dept.
9/2006	General Manager of Corporate Controlling Dept.
4/2008	General Manager of Internal Audit Dept.
6/2012	Assistant to Audit & Supervisory Board Member

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

None

**Koji Yamada**

Date of Birth:	Jun. 21, 1954
Audit & Supervisory Board Member Since:	Jun. 2013
Current Positions:	Audit & Supervisory Board Member (Full Time) (since Jun. 2013)

## Prior Positions:

4/1977	Joined the Company
	Purchasing Controlling Section, Purchasing Department of Osaka Plant
8/1996	Komatsu America Corp. (until 3/1999)
4/1999	General Manager of Planning & Coordination Department of Osaka Plant, Production Division
4/2002	Plant Manager of Awazu Plant, Production Division
4/2004	Took office as Executive Officer
4/2005	President of Industrial Machinery Division and President and Representative Director of Komatsu Industries Corporation
2/2009	Representative of All India Operations (until 3/2013)
4/2009	President of Komatsu India Ptv. Ltd. (until 3/2013)
4/2010	Took office with status equivalent to a Senior Executive Officer
4/2013	Advisor to President (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

None

**Table of Contents****Makoto Okitsu**

Date of Birth:	Dec. 2, 1939
Audit & Supervisory Board Member Since:	Jun. 2006
Current Position:	Outside Audit & Supervisory Board Member (since Jun. 2006)

## Positions Outside the Company:

4/1963	Joined Teijin Limited
6/1994	Director of Teijin Seiki Co., Ltd.
6/1996	Managing Director of Teijin Seiki Co., Ltd.
6/1998	President and Representative Director of Teijin Seiki Co., Ltd.
6/1999	Director of Teijin Limited
9/2003	President and Representative Director of Nabtesco Corporation
6/2004	Director of Teijin Limited
6/2005	Chairman and Representative Director of Teijin Limited
6/2005	Chairman and Director of Nabtesco Corporation
	(previously known as Teijin Seiki Co., Ltd.)
6/2006	Chairman and Director of Teijin Limited
6/2008	Advisor of Teijin Limited (current position)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

Advisor of Teijin Limited

**Hiroyuki Kamano**

Date of Birth:	Jul. 21, 1945
Audit & Supervisory Board Member Since:	Jun. 2007
Current Position:	Outside Audit & Supervisory Board Member (since Jun. 2007)

## Positions Outside the Company:

4/1971	Entered the Ministry of Foreign Affairs
12/1978	Retired from the Ministry of Foreign Affairs
4/1981	Registered as attorney-at-law (bengoshi)
10/1988	Partner of the Kamano Sogo Law Offices (current position)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

Partner (attorney-at-law) of Kamano Sogo Law Offices  
 Outside Director of SUMITOMO LIFE INSURANCE COMPANY  
 Outside Director of NGK Insulators, Ltd.

**Table of Contents****Kunihiro Matsuo**

Date of Birth:	Sep. 13, 1942
Audit & Supervisory Board Member Since:	Jun. 2009
Current Position:	Outside Audit & Supervisory Board Member (since Jun. 2009)

## Positions Outside the Company:

4/1968	Appointed as Prosecutor of Tokyo District Public Prosecutors Office
4/1988	Took office as Counsellor of Minister's Secretariat, Ministry of Justice
5/1998	Took office as Prosecutor of Supreme Public Prosecutors Office
9/2003	Took office as Superintending Prosecutor of Tokyo High Public Prosecutors Office
6/2004	Took office as Prosecutor-General of Supreme Public Prosecutors Office
6/2006	Retired from the position of Prosecutor-General of Supreme Public Prosecutors Office
9/2006	Registered as attorney at law (current)
6/2009	Took office as Audit & Supervisory Board Member of the Company (current)

## Principal Business Activities Outside the Company:

Attorney-at-Law  
 Outside Director of Japan Exchange Group, Inc.  
 Outside Audit & Supervisory Board Member of Toyota Motor Corporation  
 Outside Audit & Supervisory Board Member of MITSUI & CO., LTD.  
 Outside Audit & Supervisory Board Member of BROTHER INDUSTRIES, LTD.

## Notes:

- 1) Directors Kensuke Hotta, Noriaki Kano and Kouichi Ikeda satisfy the requirements for outside director set forth in Article 2, Item 15 of the Corporation Act of Japan.
- 2) Audit & Supervisory Board Members Makoto Okitsu, Hiroyuki Kamano and Kunihiro Matsuo satisfy the requirements for outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members set forth in Article 2, Item 16 of the Corporation Act of Japan.
- 3) With respect to the standards for independence of outside directors and outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members, the Company makes determinations by reference to the Guidelines Concerning Listed Company Compliance, Etc. of the Tokyo Stock Exchange and the Osaka Securities Exchange, which lists circumstances when a conflict of interest may arise between general shareholders and an outside director or Audit & Supervisory Board Member. The Company has determined that Directors Kensuke Hotta, Noriaki Kano and Kouichi Ikeda and Audit & Supervisory Board Members Makoto Okitsu, Hiroyuki Kamano and Kunihiro Matsuo are independent as none of them have any special relationship with the Company and there are no conflicts of interest between general shareholders and any one of them.
- 4) The Company introduced an executive officer system in June 1999. As of June 19, 2013, the Company has 35 officers including six persons simultaneously holding the position of director. Such persons have been marked with an asterisk next to their names in the above table.
- 5) There are no family relationships between any of the directors or Audit & Supervisory Board Members of the Company.
- 6) There are no arrangements or understandings with major shareholders, customers, suppliers or others, pursuant to which any of the directors or Audit & Supervisory Board Members of the Company were selected as a director or member of senior management.

- 7) In accordance with recommendations by The Japan Audit & Supervisory Board Members Association, Komatsu translated the words Kansayaku-kai and Kansayaku as Board of Corporate Auditors and Corporate Auditor respectively until the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. In light of new recommendations issued by such Association, the words Kansayaku-kai and Kansayaku are now translated as Audit & Supervisory Board and Audit & Supervisory Board Member respectively.

---

## **Table of Contents**

### *Corporate Governance*

#### *Basic Stance on Corporate Governance*

To continue to enjoy the trust and confidence of its stakeholders, Komatsu is working to strengthen its corporate governance structure, improve its management efficiency, conduct its business ethically and ensure sound management on a group-wide basis. To provide management transparency for its shareholders and investors, Komatsu discloses information in a fair and timely manner and actively engages in investor relations activities by holding meetings in Japan and overseas to explain its business results.

#### *Current Corporate Governance Structure*

The below paragraphs provide a brief description of Komatsu's current corporate governance structure, including its organizational framework, decision-making process and collaboration efforts.

##### a. Organizational Framework

In 1999, Komatsu introduced the executive officer system and has since worked to separate management decision-making and supervisory functions within the confines of the law. At the same time, in addition to having reduced the number of members of the Board of Directors of the Company and appointed outside directors and Audit & Supervisory Board members, the Company has been implementing operational reforms of its Board of Directors through which Board members can discuss important management issues thoroughly and make decisions promptly in order to enhance the effectiveness of the Board of Directors.

As a general rule, the Company's Board of Directors meets at least once every month, discusses and adopts resolutions concerning important matters and determines the management policies of Komatsu. The Company's Board of Directors also closely supervises and monitors the performance of the management duties undertaken by representative and other directors. Three outside directors, each of whom satisfy the requirements for independence as set forth under the listed company rules of the Tokyo Stock Exchange and the Osaka Securities Exchange, have been appointed to the Company's Board of Directors (which consisted of ten persons as of March 31, 2013) to enhance management transparency and objectivity.

With respect to the Audit & Supervisory Board Members (which consisted of five persons as of March 31, 2013), Komatsu has consistently made sure that at least half of them are outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members. Currently, all three outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members also satisfy the requirements for independence as set forth under the listed company rules of the Tokyo Stock Exchange and the Osaka Securities Exchange. Each Audit & Supervisory Board Member attends the Company's Board of Directors meetings and other important meetings and audits the performance of duties by directors. As a general rule, the Audit & Supervisory Board of the Company performs such audit functions by meeting at least once every month, determines audit policies, establishes the scope of responsibilities and accountability, and receives periodic status update reports from the directors as to the performance of his or her management duties. The Company has established the Office of Auditors' Staff and assigned five employees who work as full-time and part-time assistants to the Audit & Supervisory Board Members.

In order to ensure that its outside directors and outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members can perform their duties as expected and that the Company can find highly qualified candidates in the future, the Company has entered into limited liability agreements that limit the liability of the outside directors and outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members in the event of a dereliction of duty in accordance with Article 427, Paragraph 1 of the Corporation Act of Japan. The limit on liability provided in said agreements shall be as prescribed by laws and regulations.

## **Table of Contents**

### **b. Support for Outside Directors and Outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members**

As a general rule, the Company provides materials for Board meetings to outside directors and outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members in advance of the meetings so that they have sufficient time to review the matters that are to be discussed. With respect to matters that may be of particular importance, the Board of Directors discusses them at the Board meeting prior to the Board meeting where such matters are scheduled for resolution. In this manner, the Company ensures that the directors have sufficient time to review the matters before decisions are made and that they will have an opportunity to consider the points noted in earlier discussions before deciding upon such matters.

### **c. Collaboration between Audit & Supervisory Board Members and Independent Public Accounting Firm**

To complete the audit process effectively and efficiently, Audit & Supervisory Board Members exchange opinions with the contracted independent public accounting firm concerning audit policies, audit items to be focused upon and audit approaches. Audit & Supervisory Board Members also observe the independent public accounting firm when the firm audits Komatsu's business bases, affiliated companies and other related entities. Audit & Supervisory Board Members and the independent public accounting firm also hold meetings to exchange audit information as needed during a given fiscal year. These exchanges lead to better collaboration between Audit & Supervisory Board Members and the independent public accounting firm and a more expeditious audit process. In addition, Audit & Supervisory Board Members receive reports of the independent public accounting firm's review at the end of the first, second and third quarters, and review and confirm important financial statement matters at the end of the second quarter and the fiscal year-end. Furthermore, Audit & Supervisory Board Members evaluate the methods and results of the independent public accounting firm's review and audit by listening to their summaries and analyzing their review and audit reports.

When the Audit & Supervisory Board approves the engagement of an accounting firm to perform audit and non-audit work, the Board defines the policies, procedures and other related matters for such work, and conducts preliminary reviews of individual procedures followed by the accounting firm in order to maintain the independence of the accounting firm from Komatsu.

### **d. Collaboration between Audit & Supervisory Board Members and the Internal Audit Department**

The Internal Audit Department, in cooperation with other related departments, regularly audits business bases and affiliated companies both in Japan and overseas, evaluates the effectiveness of their internal control, reinforces their risk management and works to prevent misconduct and errors. Audit & Supervisory Board Members observe audits by the Internal Audit Department, form their own audit opinions, and give advice and recommendations to the Internal Audit Department.

In addition to reporting its audit results to the Board of Audit & Supervisory Board Members, the Internal Audit Department works closely with the Audit & Supervisory Board Members by providing various information relevant to their duties on a routine basis. There are 27 employees in the Internal Audit Department.

### **e. Collaboration between the Internal Audit Department and the Independent Public Accounting Firm**

In assessing the effectiveness of internal control, the Internal Audit Department and the independent public accounting firm collaborate as needed by exchanging opinions and sharing information.

**Table of Contents**

Komatsu has entered into an audit contract with KPMG AZSA LLC and receives audit services for its accounts in connection with both non-consolidated and consolidated financial statements. Komatsu has also entered into consultation contracts with a number of law firms, receiving advice on important legal issues as needed, in an effort to reduce its legal risk.

In 1995, Komatsu established the International Advisory Board ( IAB ) to obtain objective advice and suggestions concerning Komatsu as a global company from internationally leading figures. IAB meets at least once a year to exchange opinions on various matters.

**Table of Contents****B. Compensation**

In an effort to maintain an objective and transparent remuneration system, the policy and levels of remuneration for Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members of the Company are deliberated by the Compensation Advisory Committee, which consists of four external members (two Outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members, one Outside Director and one outside expert) and one internal member. Taking its reports and recommendations into consideration, the remuneration for Directors is determined by the Board of Directors and the remuneration for Audit & Supervisory Board Members is determined by discussions amongst the Audit & Supervisory Board Members. Such remuneration for Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members must be within the aggregate remuneration limits approved at a meeting of the shareholders. After such remuneration for Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members are determined by the Board of Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members, respectively, the determined remuneration is subject to approval at the general meeting of shareholders in accordance with the Corporation Act of Japan.

With regards to remuneration levels, comparison of other key, globally active manufacturers in Japan is made by the Compensation Advisory Committee and is reflected in its recommendations.

The remuneration for Directors is composed of a fixed, monthly remuneration and a variable remuneration linked to Komatsu's consolidated performance. The variable remuneration for Directors is linked to Komatsu's consolidated performance as measured by Komatsu's consolidated return-on-equity and return-on-asset performance indicators, subject to certain adjustment indicators for growth and segment profit margins, as set forth in further detail in the below table. The variable remuneration can range from 0% up to a maximum of 60% of the total annual remuneration paid to Directors. Two-thirds of the total amount of the variable remuneration is expected to be paid out in the form of cash bonuses, and the remaining one-third as stock-based remuneration in the form of stock acquisition rights. Stock-based remuneration in the form of stock acquisition rights is provided so that Directors foster the same perspective on corporate value as shareholders and are incentivized to work towards enhancing the long-term corporate value of the Company. In the event that the variable remuneration is 0%, only the fixed, monthly remuneration will be paid out to Directors.

	Indicator	Ratio
Basic Indicators	Consolidated ROE (Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. divided by Komatsu Ltd. shareholders' equity)	70%
	Consolidated ROA (Income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies divided by total assets)	30%
Adjustment Indicators	Adjustment according to growth rate of consolidated sales and profit margin of segment	

The remuneration for Audit & Supervisory Board Members only consists of a fixed, monthly remuneration. This remuneration arrangement is designed to support their independent position, with authority to audit the execution of duties by the Directors and without being influenced by changes in the corporate performance of the Company.

While Komatsu had a retirement allowance system for its Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members in the past, such system was terminated as of June 2007.

The aggregate compensation, including cash bonuses and stock reacquisition rights, paid to all Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members by the Company for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 for their respective services, was ¥928 million. The breakdown of the compensation is set forth below.



**Table of Contents**

(Millions of Yen)

Remuneration	Number of Persons Paid	Monetary Remuneration			Non-Monetary Remuneration, Etc. Stock Acquisition Rights	Total Amount of Remuneration Paid
		Salary	Cash Bonus	Total		
Directors	<b>10</b>	<b>453</b>	<b>230</b>	<b>682</b>	<b>124</b>	<b>806</b>
(Outside Directors included above)	(3)	(40)	(9)	(49)	(3)	(52)
Audit & Supervisory Board Members	<b>6</b>	<b>122</b>		<b>122</b>		<b>122</b>
(Outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members included above)	(3)	(45)	( )	(45)	( )	(45)
Total	<b>16</b>	<b>574</b>	<b>230</b>	<b>804</b>	<b>124</b>	<b>928</b>
(Outside Directors and Outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members included above)	(6)	(85)	(9)	(94)	(3)	(97)

Notes:

- As of the end of the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, there were ten directors (three of whom were outside directors) and five Audit & Supervisory Board Members (three of whom were outside Audit & Supervisory Board Members). The numbers of persons and the remuneration amounts set forth in the above table, however, also include numbers and remuneration amounts paid during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 to one Audit & Supervisory Board Member who retired as of the close of the 143rd ordinary general meeting of shareholders (held on June 20, 2012).
- During the 135th ordinary general meeting of shareholders (held in June 2004), the shareholders resolved that the aggregate maximum amount of remuneration to be paid to Directors per month (excluding bonuses and stock acquisition rights) shall not exceed ¥60 million (excluding any amounts that are paid as a salary to Directors who are concurrently an employee of the Company) and during the 143<sup>rd</sup> ordinary general meeting of shareholders (held in June 2012), the aggregate maximum amount of remuneration to be paid to Audit & Supervisory Board Members per month shall not exceed ¥13.5 million. At the 141st ordinary general meeting of shareholders (held in June 2010), the shareholders approved the establishment of the maximum limit of ¥360 million (excluding any amounts that are paid as a salary to Directors who are concurrently an employee of the Company) for the yearly remuneration for Directors of the Company in the form of stock acquisition rights (of which no more than ¥50 million shall be allocated to Outside Directors).
- The remuneration value for stock acquisition rights included in the Total Amount of Remuneration Paid is the amount that has been recorded by the Company from an accounting perspective as Non-Monetary Compensation, etc. for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013.
- No additional salary was paid to those Directors who concurrently were employees of the Company.
- The figures in the above table have been rounded to the nearest Yen one million.  
Below are the names, titles and amounts of remuneration paid by the Company to persons whose remuneration (including cash bonuses and stock acquisition rights) equaled or exceeded ¥100 million for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013.

(Millions of Yen)

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Name and Title	Monetary Remuneration			Non-Monetary Remuneration, Etc.	Total Amount of Remuneration Paid
	Salary	Cash Bonus	Total	Stock Acquisition Rights	
Kunio Noji, Director	98	52	151	27	178
Masahiro Sakane, (Director until June 19, 2013)	89	48	137	27	164
Yoshinori Komamura, (Director until June 19, 2013)	59	31	90	17	107

---

## Table of Contents

Notes:

- 1) The remuneration value for stock acquisition rights included in the Total Amount of Remuneration Paid is the amount that has been recorded by the Company from an accounting perspective as Non-Monetary Compensation, etc. for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. More specifically, Kunio Noji and Masahiro Sakane have each been granted the right to acquire 18,700 shares of the common stock of the Company and Yoshinori Komamura has been granted the right to acquire 11,600 shares of the common stock of the Company (all at an exercise price per share of ¥1). In accordance with the Accounting Standards Board of Japan Statement No. 8 Accounting Standard for Share-based Payment, the remuneration value for stock acquisition rights that has been recorded by the Company from an accounting perspective for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 has been calculated by multiplying the fair value per share (¥1,470 per share) as of the grant date (August 1, 2012) by the number of shares granted.
- 2) The retirement allowance system for Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members has been abolished as of June 2007.
- 3) The figures in the above table have been rounded to the nearest Yen one million. Accordingly, the amounts do not necessarily add up to figures provided under Monetary Remuneration Total or Total Amount of Remuneration Paid.

### *Cash Bonuses*

Cash bonuses to be received by the Directors are determined by a resolution adopted at the ordinary general meeting of shareholders of the Company held in June of each year. Cash bonuses so paid are not deductible by the Company for tax purposes, and are reported for financial reporting purposes under selling, general and administrative expenses as a charge against income for the fiscal year in which they are paid. The Company does not grant bonuses to its Audit & Supervisory Board Members.

### *Retirement Allowance*

At the ordinary general meeting of shareholders held on June 22, 2007, a resolution was passed to abolish the retirement benefit system for Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members and to pay each Director and Audit & Supervisory Board Member the amount of retirement benefits for the period of service up to June 22, 2007 at the time of their respective retirement. Accordingly, Komatsu did not make any provision for retirement allowance for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 and will not make any provision for retirement allowance in the future.

### *Stock-Based Remuneration*

Komatsu has stock-based remuneration plans for (1) the Directors of the Company and (2) certain employees of the Company and directors of major subsidiaries of the Company. Under these plans, the Company may grant rights to subscribe for or purchase shares of common stock of the Company ( stock acquisition rights ) upon approval by shareholders at the ordinary general meeting of shareholders. The Company does not grant stock acquisition rights to its Audit & Supervisory Board Members.

At the 141st ordinary general meeting of shareholders held on June 23, 2010, the shareholders approved the establishment of the maximum limit of ¥360 million for the yearly remuneration for Directors of the Company in the form of stock acquisition rights (of which no more than ¥50 million shall be allocated for Outside Directors). Within this maximum limit, the Company may issue stock acquisition rights upon resolution of the Board of Directors.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, the Company granted to its Directors 843 stock acquisition rights conferring the right to purchase a total number of 84,300 shares of common stock of the Company. The exercise price for these stock acquisition rights granted as of August 1, 2012 was ¥1 per share. These stock acquisition rights are exercisable from August 1, 2015 to July 31, 2020.

For additional information regarding the stock acquisition rights granted to Directors and certain employees of the Company and Directors of its subsidiaries during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, see Item 6.E. Share Ownership.



**Table of Contents**

**C. Board Practices**

All Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members are elected at a general meeting of shareholders. Directors serve a one year term and Audit & Supervisory Board Members serve a four year term pursuant to the Company's Articles of Incorporation. However, a Director or an Audit & Supervisory Board Member may serve any number of consecutive terms.

The Board of Directors elects from its members a certain number of Representative Directors who have the power severally to represent the Company in all matters, and elects a President from the Representative Directors. At its discretion, the Board of Directors may also elect a Chairman from among its members and may grant special titles to one or more Directors as it deems necessary. At the present time, the Chairman and the President are Representative Directors.

The Audit & Supervisory Board Members of the Company are not required to be, and are not, certified public accountants. Each Audit & Supervisory Board Member audits the performance of the Directors, and may at any time request the Directors to report on the business activities of the Company or investigate the business as well as the financial situation of the Company. Certain powers are provided under the Corporation Act of Japan to enable the Audit & Supervisory Board Members to carry out these functions. Further, each Audit & Supervisory Board Member continues to perform the function of examining the annual financial documents and the rendering of an opinion thereon for the general meeting of shareholders. The Audit & Supervisory Board Members may not at the same time be Directors, managers or employees of the Company or of any of its subsidiaries. The Company does not have an audit committee.

For information relating to the period during which each of the Company's Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members have served in their respective offices, see Item 6.A. Directors and Senior Management.

The Company does not have a remuneration committee but does have a Compensation Advisory Committee that is comprised of a majority of external experts as noted in Item 6.B. Compensation.

None of the Directors have entered into service contracts with the Company or any of its subsidiaries providing for benefits upon termination of employment.

**Table of Contents****D. Employees**

The following table shows the number of employees of Komatsu by operating segment as of March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011.

**Number of employees by operating segment**

	As of March 31,		
	2013	2012	2011
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	<b>41,902</b> <b>(5,400)</b>	39,462 (6,171)	36,470 (4,950)
Industrial Machinery and Others	<b>4,182</b> <b>(968)</b>	4,057 (1,034)	3,924 (904)
Corporate	<b>646</b> <b>(158)</b>	687 (162)	665 (110)
<b>Total</b>	<b>46,730</b> <b>(6,526)</b>	44,206 (7,367)	41,059 (5,964)

## Notes:

- 1) The numbers in parentheses refer to the average number of temporary employees during the relevant fiscal year ended March 31, which are not included in the number of employees.
- 2) The number of employees under Corporate refers to employees working for administrative departments who cannot be classified into the two operating segments.
- 3) The number of employees as of March 31, 2013 increased by 2,524 as compared to the number as of March 31, 2012. This increase was due primarily to the inclusion of employees of newly consolidated subsidiaries and the expansion of Komatsu's business in Latin America. The Company has a labor contract with the Komatsu Labor Union covering conditions of employment. This contract, which provides that all employees except management and certain other enumerated personnel must become union members, has been renegotiated every two years and its present term runs until August 2013.

The employees of the Company's principal Japanese subsidiaries are covered by separate labor contracts between such subsidiaries and the unions representing their employees. These contracts contain provisions generally similar to those contained in the Company's contract with the Komatsu Labor Union. Certain overseas employees of the Company and subsidiaries are also covered by labor contracts between their employer and unions in the relevant locale representing the employees.

Management and the Komatsu Labor Union have negotiations and meetings on a regular basis in order to discuss various issues and share concerns relating to the financial condition of Komatsu. The Company believes that management has a good relationship with the Komatsu Labor Union.

**Table of Contents****E. Share Ownership**

The following table sets forth the number of shares owned by the Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members of the Company as of June 19, 2013.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Position</b>	<b>Number of shares held (in thousands)</b>
Kunio Noji	Chairman of the Board, Representative Director	105
Tetsuji Ohashi	President, Representative Director	40
Mikio Fujitsuka	Director	20
Fujitoshi Takamura	Director	17
Hisashi Shinozuka	Director	12
Kazunori Kuromoto	Director	10
Masanao Mori	Director	9
Kensuke Hotta	Director	1
Noriaki Kano	Director	17
Kouichi Ikeda	Director	
Makoto Morimoto	Audit & Supervisory Board Member (Full Time)	15
Koji Yamada	Audit & Supervisory Board Member (Full Time)	16
Makoto Okitsu	Audit & Supervisory Board Member	
Hiroyuki Kamano	Audit & Supervisory Board Member	3
Kunihiro Matsuo	Audit & Supervisory Board Member	
<b>Total</b>		<b>269</b>

Note: The number of shares for each Director and Audit & Supervisory Board Member are rounded down. Accordingly, the sum of the amounts indicated in the Number of shares held (in thousands) column may not add up to the figure provided as the Total. The total number of shares of the Company's stock owned by the Company's Directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members is less than one percent of the issued and outstanding shares of common stock of the Company.

As noted in Item 6.B. Compensation, during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, Directors of the Company were granted 843 stock acquisition rights (conferring the right to purchase a total number of 84,300 shares of common stock of the Company), and the exercise price for these stock acquisition rights granted as of August 1, 2012 was ¥1 per share. These stock acquisition rights are exercisable from August 1, 2015 to July 31, 2020.

Pursuant to approval by the shareholders at the ordinary general meeting of shareholders, certain employees of the Company and directors of major subsidiaries of the Company were granted in the aggregate 2,555 stock acquisition rights (conferring the right to purchase a total number of 255,500 shares of common stock of the Company) during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. The exercise price for these stock acquisition rights granted as of August 1, 2012 was ¥1 per share. These stock acquisition rights are exercisable from August 1, 2015 to July 31, 2020.

At the 144th ordinary general meeting of shareholders held on June 19, 2013, it was approved that the Company grant no more than 2,358 stock acquisition rights (conferring the right to purchase a total number of 235,800 shares of common stock of the Company) to employees of the Company and directors of major subsidiaries of the Company. At such ordinary general meeting of shareholders, the Company's Board of Directors was given the authority to issue such stock acquisition rights to employees of the Company and directors of major subsidiaries of the Company as it deems appropriate.

**Table of Contents****Item 7. Major Shareholders and Related Party Transactions****A. Major Shareholders**

The following table shows the number of the Company's shares held by the 10 major shareholders of the Company and their percentage of the number of common shares outstanding as of March 31, 2013.

**Major Shareholders as of March 31, 2013**

Name of Major Shareholders	Number of Shares Held (in thousands)	Percentage (%)
Japan Trustee Services Bank, Ltd. (Trust Account)	51,721	5.26
The Master Trust Bank of Japan, Ltd. (Trust Account)	42,892	4.36
Taiyo Life Insurance Company	34,000	3.45
Nippon Life Insurance Company	33,283	3.38
State Street Bank and Trust Company		
(standing proxy: The Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation Limited, Tokyo Branch)	24,561	2.49
The Bank of New York Mellon as Depository Bank for Depository Receipt Holders		
(standing proxy: Sumitomo Mitsui Banking Corporation)	23,145	2.35
SSBT OD05 OMNIBUS ACCOUNT TREATY CLIENTS		
(standing proxy: The Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation Limited, Tokyo Branch)	21,153	2.15
JPMorgan Chase Bank 380055		
(standing proxy: Mizuho Corporate Bank, Ltd., Settlement & Clearing Services Division)	20,671	2.10
State Street Bank and Trust Company		
(standing proxy: Mizuho Corporate Bank, Ltd., Settlement & Clearing Services Division)	18,202	1.85
Sumitomo Mitsui Banking Corporation	17,835	1.81
<b>Total of Top 10 Shareholders</b>	<b>287,468</b>	<b>29.24</b>

Notes:

- 1) The figures for each shareholder are rounded down. Accordingly, the sum of the amounts indicated in each column does not necessarily add up to the figures provided as Total of Top 10 Shareholders.
- 2) 29,802 thousand shares of treasury stock held by the Company are excluded from the Major Shareholders list above.
- 3) Shares held by the Japan Trustee Services Bank, Ltd. and The Master Trust Bank of Japan, Ltd. are held through trusts. To the best knowledge of the Company, no significant change has occurred in the ownership percentage of the major shareholders listed above during the past three years. The Company's major shareholders are not entitled to any voting rights that are not provided to the other shareholders.

As of March 31, 2013, 20.2% of the shares of common stock issued (983,130,260 shares) were held of record by 205 residents of the United States, of which 23,145,522 shares were in the form of ADSs and 175,627,322 shares were held of record in the form of common stock.



## Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

To the best knowledge of the Company, the Company is not, directly or indirectly, controlled by another corporation or another entity, by the Government of Japan or by any foreign government, nor does any person own more than 10% of the Company's common stock.

There are no arrangements that are known to the Company the operation of which may at a subsequent date result in a change in control of the Company.

**Table of Contents**

**B. Related Party Transactions**

In the ordinary course of business, Komatsu purchases and sells materials, supplies and services from and to its affiliates accounted for by the equity method. Komatsu regularly has trade accounts and other receivables payable by, and accounts payable to, its affiliates accounted for by the equity method. Furthermore, Komatsu has made loans to its affiliates accounted for by the equity method for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. Komatsu believes all of these transactions with, and loans to, its affiliates accounted for by the equity method to be arms-length transactions. In addition, Komatsu does not consider the amounts of these transactions with, or loans to, its affiliates accounted for by the equity method to be material to its business.

For additional information, see Note 7 to the Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this report.

**C. Interests of Experts and Counsel**

Not applicable.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Item 8. Financial Information**

#### **A. Consolidated Statements and Other Financial Information**

See the Consolidated Financial Statements and Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements included in the Company's Financial Report to Shareholders for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013 attached hereto.

##### Legal Proceedings

Komatsu is involved in certain legal actions and claims arising out of the ordinary course of its business. It is the opinion of Komatsu's management and its legal counsel that such litigation and claims will be resolved without any material effect on Komatsu's financial position or profitability.

##### Dividend Policy

The Company's dividend policy is to redistribute profits taking into consideration its consolidated business results while striving to continue providing stable dividend payments. Specifically, the Company has set the goal of a consolidated dividend payout ratio of 20% or higher. Further, the Company maintains a policy of not decreasing dividends, as long as the consolidated dividend payout ratio does not surpass 40%. The Company distributes dividends twice a year (i.e., year-end dividends and interim dividends). The resolutions for the distribution of year-end dividends and of interim dividends are adopted at the ordinary general meeting of shareholders and at the meeting of the Board of Directors. After reviewing the business results for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, as well as current and future business prospects, the Company set the fiscal year-end dividend at ¥24 per share. Annual cash dividends for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, including the interim dividend of ¥24 per share, amounted to ¥48 per share (an increase of ¥6 per share as compared to the annual cash dividends for the previous fiscal year).

With respect to annual cash dividends for the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014, the Company plans to set the annual cash dividends per share at ¥58, an increase of ¥10 per share as compared to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013. In light of the new mid-range management plan,

Together We Innovate GEMBA Worldwide, launched in April 2013, the Company has also revised its dividend policy starting the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014. More specifically, the revised policy calls for a consolidated dividend payout ratio of 30% or higher and for the Company to not decrease dividends as long as the consolidated dividend payout ratio does not surpass 50%.

#### **B. Significant Changes**

No significant change has occurred since the date of the Company's annual financial statements.

**Table of Contents**

**Item 9. The Offer and Listing**

**A. Offer and Listing Details**

The shares of common stock of the Company have been listed on the Tokyo Stock Exchange ( TSE ) and the Osaka Securities Exchange in Japan since May 1949.

In the United States, the Company's American Depositary Shares ( ADSs ) are traded over-the-counter in the form of ADRs and are issued and exchanged by The Bank of New York Mellon in New York as the depository. The Bank of New York Mellon replaced Citibank, N.A. as depository on September 29, 2008. During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2010, the Company changed the ratio of its ADSs. Prior to February 16, 2010, each ADS represented four shares of the Company's common stock. On and after February 16, 2010, each ADS represents one share of the Company's common stock.

As of March 31, 2013, 952,778,859 shares were outstanding out of a total of 983,130,260 shares of common stock issued. This incorporates 23,145,522 ADSs (equivalent to 23,145,522 shares of common stock when using the current ratio of one ADS representing one common stock, or approximately 2.4% of the total number of shares of common stock outstanding) held by 28 registered ADR holders.

**Table of Contents**

The following table sets forth the reported high and low sales prices of the Company's stock on the TSE and the reported high and low sales prices of ADSs for the periods indicated.

Period	TSE (Japanese Yen)		ADS (U.S. dollars)	
	High	Low	High	Low
<b>Annual highs and lows</b>				
The fiscal year ended March 31, 2009	3,440	702	32.62	8.18
The fiscal year ended March 31, 2010	2,099	1,090	22.93	11.25
The fiscal year ended March 31, 2011	2,858	1,571	35.00	17.47
The fiscal year ended March 31, 2012	2,926	1,449	36.18	19.05
The fiscal year ended March 31, 2013	2,507	1,439	29.78	18.73
<b>Quarterly highs and lows</b>				
The fiscal year ended March 31, 2012				
1 <sup>st</sup> quarter	2,926	2,235	36.18	28.00
2 <sup>nd</sup> quarter	2,595	1,631	32.27	21.28
3 <sup>rd</sup> quarter	2,063	1,449	26.69	19.05
4 <sup>th</sup> quarter	2,512	1,804	30.83	23.52
The fiscal year ended March 31, 2013				
1 <sup>st</sup> quarter	2,437	1,711	29.78	22.19
2 <sup>nd</sup> quarter	1,977	1,463	24.72	18.73
3 <sup>rd</sup> quarter	2,188	1,439	25.71	18.73
4 <sup>th</sup> quarter	2,507	2,196	27.15	23.00
<b>Monthly highs and lows</b>				
December 2012	2,188	1,818	25.71	22.33
January 2013	2,446	2,196	26.95	25.36
February 2013	2,507	2,249	27.15	24.36
March 2013	2,356	2,198	25.30	23.00
April 2013	2,680	2,004	27.30	22.00
May 2013	3,095	2,493	29.63	25.59

Note: During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2010, the Company changed the ratio of common stock represented by ADSs. Prior to February 16, 2010, each ADS represented four shares of the Company's common stock. On and after February 16, 2010, each ADS represents one share of the Company's common stock. The high and low sales prices set forth in the above table prior to March 2010 have been revised by dividing the actual sales price that were reported using the ratio of one ADS to four common stock (the ratio that was in effect prior to March 2010) by four.

**Table of Contents**

**B. Plan of Distribution**

Not applicable.

**C. Markets**

See Item 9.A. Offer and listing details.

**D. Selling Shareholders**

Not applicable.

**E. Dilution**

Not applicable.

**F. Expenses of the Issue**

Not applicable.

## **Table of Contents**

### **Item 10. Additional Information**

#### **A. Share Capital**

Not applicable.

#### **B. Memorandum and Articles of Association**

##### **I. Organization and Registration**

The Company is a joint stock corporation (*kabushiki kaisha*) incorporated in Japan under the Corporation Act of Japan. It is registered in the Commercial Register (*Shogyo Tokibo*) maintained by the Minato Branch Office of Tokyo Legal Affairs Bureau, which has the jurisdiction over the district in which the Company's head office is currently located.

##### **II. Objectives and Purposes**

The objectives and purposes of the Company, provided in Art 2 of the Company's Articles of Incorporation, is to engage in the following businesses:

1. Manufacture, repair, sale and purchase of construction machinery, agricultural machinery, industrial machinery, automobiles, internal combustion engines and various types of other machinery and equipment and parts thereof.
2. Manufacture, sale and purchase of various iron and steel goods.
3. Smelting, processing, sale and purchase of various types of iron and steel, pig-iron, ferroalloys and other special metals.
4. Manufacture, sale and purchase of various types of electric materials and equipment.
5. Manufacture, sale and purchase of various synthetic resin products.
6. Manufacture, repair, sale and purchase of various armaments and parts thereof.
7. Mining industry, and sale and purchase of minerals.
8. Designing, executing, supervising and contracting various types of civil engineering and construction work for plants, dwelling house, and other structures.
9. Sale and purchase of lumber, processed lumber products and various types of civil engineering and construction materials, machinery and equipment.
10. Sale, purchase and lease of real property.

11. Manufacture, sale and repair of industrial waste and general waste treatment devices.
12. Collection, transportation, treatment and recycling of industrial waste and general waste, sale of such recycled products, and consulting on these matters.
13. Development, creation, sales and consulting on computer software and computer systems.
14. Electronic commerce using networks such as the internet.
15. Information processing and information providing service.
16. Financing services.
17. All business incidental to each and every one of the preceding items.
18. Investing in other companies or promoting the organization of other companies.  
The objectives and purposes of other companies in which the Company may invest may not necessarily be restricted by the objectives and purposes of the Company.



**Table of Contents**

## III. Directors

The Corporation Act of Japan provides that the Directors must disclose the material facts on the relevant transactions to the Board of Directors and obtain approval of the Directors at such meeting on engaging in any business competing with the Company (Art. 356, Paragraph 1, Item 1) or effecting any transactions involving a conflict of interests (Art. 356, Paragraph 1, Items 2 and 3). It also provides that any Director who has a material interest in the subject matter of a resolution to be taken by the Board of Directors cannot vote in such resolution (Art. 369, Paragraph 2). Neither the Articles of Incorporation nor the Regulations of the Board of Directors of the Company have any additional provisions regarding a Director's power to vote on a proposal, arrangement or contract in which the Director is materially interested. The Corporation Act of Japan does not have an explicit provision concerning a director's obligation not to use the corporation's opportunity for his or her personal benefit or for the benefit of a third party, although such a conduct may be restricted by the duty of faithfulness (Art. 355).

With respect to directors' compensation, the Corporation Act of Japan requires that, unless otherwise specified in the articles of incorporation (which specification does not exist in the case of the Company), the amount (if such payable amount is fixed), the calculation method (if the amount is unfixd) or the substance (in the case of non-cash benefits) of directors' compensation shall be fixed by a resolution of a general meeting of shareholders (Art. 361, Paragraph 1). The Board of Directors of the Company may determine the other details of their compensation in accordance with what are resolved at a general meeting of shareholders as above.

The Corporation Act of Japan provides that the incurrence by a corporation of a significant amount of borrowings from a third party needs approval of the corporation's board of directors (Art. 362, Paragraph 4, Item 2). The Company's Regulations of the Board of Directors contain corresponding provisions (The Articles of Incorporation of the Company have no specific provisions as to a borrowing power exercisable by the Directors.) There is no mandatory retirement age for Directors under the Corporation Act of Japan, the Articles of Incorporation or the Regulations of the Board of Directors of the Company. There is no requirement concerning the number of shares an individual must hold in order to qualify as a Director of the Company under the Corporation Act of Japan, the Articles of Incorporation or the Regulations of the Board of Directors of the Company.

## IV. Common Stock

Set forth below is information relating to the Company's shares of common stock, including brief summaries of the relevant provisions of its Articles of Incorporation and Share Handling Regulations of the Company, as currently in effect, and of the Corporation Act of Japan and related legislation.

## General

The Company's authorized share capital is 3,955,000,000 shares, of which 983,130,260 shares were issued as of May 31, 2013. Under the Corporation Act of Japan and the Law Concerning Book-Entry Transfer of Corporate Bonds, Stocks and Other Securities of Japan (including regulations promulgated thereunder; the Book-Entry Law), the listed companies issue no share certificates and any share certificates of such companies are invalid after January 5, 2009. Shares of such companies must be registered, and are transferable by an agreement between the transferor and the transferee but such transfer may not be asserted against a third party without its registration. In order to assert shareholders rights against the Company, a shareholder must have its name and address, etc. registered on the shareholder register under the Corporation Act of Japan and the Book-Entry Law, in accordance with the Company's Share Handling Regulations.

A holder of shares must register its shares in the transfer account of the Japan Securities Depository Center, Inc. (hereinafter referred to as JASDEC) or the account management institutions of the securities companies, etc. at which shareholders have established transfer accounts (hereinafter referred to as the Securities Companies). Modification of entries in the shareholders' register shall be generally made through notifications from JASDEC, including notifications and the like for all shareholder information (excluding such notices as set forth in Art. 154, Paragraph 3 of the Book-Entry Law). A shareholder shall place his/her name and address, etc. on file through Securities Companies and JASDEC, as prescribed by JASDEC. If a shareholder resides in a foreign country, he/she or his/her statutory agent shall appoint a standing proxy in Japan or specify a place in Japan to receive notices, and shall place the name or title and address of the standing proxy and the place to receive notice on file through Securities Companies and JASDEC, as prescribed by JASDEC.

**Table of Contents**

When a shareholder makes any request or exercises any other shareholders' right, he/she shall attach or provide items attesting that he/she made the request by himself/herself. Provided, however, that this shall not apply when it can be verified by the Company that the request was made by the shareholder himself/herself.

The registered holder of deposited shares underlying the ADSs is the depositary for the ADSs. Accordingly, holders of ADSs will not be able to directly assert shareholders' rights.

Rights of Shareholders

*Dividends from Surplus*

Under the Corporation Act of Japan, a joint stock corporation can make distribution of dividends from surplus to its shareholders (or pledgees) by the resolution of its shareholders' meeting anytime. Under the Company's Articles of Incorporation, it is only stipulated that the record date of year-end dividends shall be March 31 of each year, but it does not prevent the Company from making distribution of dividends from surplus based on other record dates. In addition, under the Corporation Act of Japan, a joint stock corporation can stipulate in its articles of incorporation, that it may distribute interim dividends to its shareholders (or pledgees) once per business year by resolution of its board of directors. Under the Company's Articles of Incorporation, the Company may, by resolution of the Board of Directors, distribute interim dividends, on the record date of which is September 30 in each year. Furthermore, under the Corporation Act of Japan, the Company is able to stipulate in its Articles of Incorporation that it can basically (i.e., other than the cases where its non-consolidated annual financial statements and certain documents relating to the latest fiscal year do not present fairly its assets and profits or losses, as required by ordinances of the Ministry of Justice) make distribution of dividends from surplus to its shareholders (or pledgees) by the resolution of its Board of Directors as long as the term of office of its directors expires no later than the close of an ordinary general meeting of shareholders with respect to the latest fiscal year ending within one year from the assumption of office and it has the Audit & Supervisory Board and an Accounting Auditor, but the Company has not stipulated such clauses in its Articles of Incorporation.

Dividends from surplus will usually be distributed in cash, but it can be distributed in kind under the Corporation Act of Japan. If a distribution of dividends from surplus is to be made in kind, the Company may, pursuant to a resolution of a general meeting of shareholders which determines to make the distribution, grant rights to its shareholders to require the Company to make such distribution in cash instead of in kind to shareholders. If no such rights are granted to shareholders, the relevant dividends from surplus must be approved by a special resolution of a general meeting of shareholders.

The Corporation Act of Japan requires that, until the aggregate amount of the Company's legal reserve and additional paid-in capital is at least one-quarter of its stated capital, it set aside in its legal reserve and/or additional paid-in capital an amount equal to at least one-tenth of the amount of the dividends of surplus distributed.

The distributable amount of surplus is calculated by making some adjustments to the amount of surplus.

Under the Corporation Act of Japan, the amount of surplus is calculated by the following formula:

- (1) base amount +
- (2) additional amount -
- (3) subtractive amount, where

(1) the total amount of other capital surplus and other retained earnings as of the end of the last business year.

(2) (a) the amount of the consideration for treasury stock disposed of after the end of the last business year less the book value thereof;

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

- (b) the amount of reduction of stated capital made after the end of the last business year less the portion thereof that has been transferred to additional paid-in capital or legal reserve (if any);
  
- (c) the amount of reduction of additional paid-in capital or legal reserve made after the end of the last business year less the portion thereof that has been transferred to stated capital (if any).

**Table of Contents**

- (3) (a) the book value of treasury stock retired after the end of the last business year;
- (b) the total book value of surplus reduced by the distribution of dividends from surplus made after the end of the last business year;
- (c) other amounts set forth in ordinances of the Ministry of Justice.
- The distributable amount of surplus is calculated by the following formula:

(A) the amount of surplus + (B) additional amounts - (C) subtractive amounts, where

(A) the amount of surplus

(B) (a) the amount of profit in the extraordinary financial statements

(b) the amount of consideration for any of its treasury stock disposed of recorded in the extraordinary financial statements

(C) (a) the book value of its treasury stock

(b) the amount of consideration for any of its treasury stock disposed of after the end of the last business year

(c) the amount of loss in the extraordinary financial statements

(d) other amounts set forth in ordinances of the Ministry of Justice

Under the Corporation Act of Japan, a joint stock corporation can make extraordinary financial statements anytime during business years. If such extraordinary financial statements have been prepared and have been approved by the board of directors or (if so required by the Corporation Act of Japan) by a general meeting of shareholders, then the distributable amount of surplus must be adjusted as stated above.

*Stock Splits*

The Corporation Act of Japan permits the Company, by resolution of its Board of Directors, to make stock splits, regardless of the value of net assets (as appearing in its latest non-consolidated balance sheet) per share.

Under the Corporation Act of Japan, by resolution of the Company's Board of Directors, the Company may increase the authorized shares up to the number reflecting the rate of stock splits and amend its Articles of Incorporation by resolution of its Board of Directors to this effect without the approval of a shareholders' meeting. Before a stock split, the Company must give public notice of such stock split specifying the record date not less than two weeks prior to such record date.

*Japanese Unit Share System*

Since August 1, 2006, 100 shares of common stock of the Company constitute one trading unit. The Corporation Act of Japan permits the Company, by resolution of its Board of Directors, to reduce the number of shares which constitutes one unit or abolish the unit share system, and amend its Articles of Incorporation to this effect without the approval of a shareholders' meeting.

*Transferability of Shares Representing Less than One Unit.*

After January 5, 2009, shares representing less than one unit are automatically registered in the transfer account, and upon such registration shares representing less than one unit may be transferable through the book entry system, although such shares may not be sold in the market under the rules of the relevant stock exchange. A holder of shares representing less than one unit may collect such shares so that they constitute one unit and then sell them as one unit of shares in the market.

---

## **Table of Contents**

As the transfers of ADRs do not require a change in the ownership of the underlying shares, holders of ADRs evidencing ADSs, that constitute less than one unit of shares are not affected by these restrictions in their ability to transfer the ADRs. However, because transfers of less than one unit of the underlying shares are not normally permitted in the market in Japan, the deposit agreement provides that the right of ADR holders to surrender their ADRs and withdraw the underlying shares for sale in Japan may only be exercised as to whole units.

### *Right of a Holder of Shares Representing Less than One Unit to Require the Company to Purchase Its Shares.*

A holder of shares representing less than one unit may, at any time, require the Company to purchase their shares through Securities Companies and JASDEC. These shares will be purchased at (a) the closing price of the shares of the Company reported by the Tokyo Stock Exchange on the day on which the application for the purchase request reached the handling office of the transfer agent, multiplied by the number of shares or (b) in case that no trading is effected at the Tokyo Stock Exchange on that day, the price of the first trade effected thereafter, multiplied by the number of shares. As a practical matter, however, because holders of ADRs representing less than one unit are not able to withdraw the underlying shares from deposit, these holders will not be able to exercise this right.

### *Right of a Holder of Shares Representing Less than One Unit to Purchase from the Company its Shares up to a Whole Unit.*

The Articles of Incorporation of the Company provide that a holder of shares representing less than one unit may request that the Company sell a certain number of shares less than one unit so that the shares owned by such shareholder combined with such additional shares may constitute one unit through Securities Companies and JASDEC. These shares will be sold at (a) the closing price of the share of the Company reported at a market operated by the Tokyo Stock Exchange on the day on which the application for additional purchase become effective, multiplied by the number of shares applied for additional purchase or (b) in the case that no trading is effected on such day or if the Tokyo Stock Exchange is closed on such day, the price at which the share of the Company is first traded thereafter, multiplied by the number of shares applied for additional purchase.

### *Voting Rights of a Holder of Shares Representing Less than One Unit.*

A holder of shares representing less than one unit cannot exercise any voting rights of those shares. In calculating the quorum for various voting purposes, the aggregate number of shares representing less than one unit will be excluded from the number of outstanding shares. A holder of shares representing one or more whole units will have one vote for each whole unit represented.

A holder of shares representing less than one unit does not have any rights relating to voting, such as the right to participate in a demand for the resignation of a director, the right to participate in a demand for the convocation of a general meeting of shareholders and the right to join with other shareholders to propose an agenda item to be addressed at a general meeting of shareholders.

In addition, under the Corporation Act of Japan, a joint stock corporation can further restrict the rights of a holder of shares constituting less than one unit. Under the Company's Articles of Incorporation, a holder of shares constituting less than one unit does not have rights, other than the following:

to receive annual and interim dividends,

to receive shares and/or cash by way of consolidation of stocks, stock splits, gratis issue of shares to shareholders, stock-for-stock exchange (*kabushiki-kokan*) or stock-for-stock transfer (*kabushiki-iten*), corporate split or merger,

to receive shares, cash and/or other assets in exchange for shares in which a shareholder of the Company has the option to acquire or which the Company has the option to acquire,

to participate in any distribution of surplus assets upon liquidation,

---

## Table of Contents

to request the Company to purchase shares constituting less than one unit, and

any other rights which are prohibited from being restricted by Art. 189, Paragraph 2 of the Corporation Act of Japan and ordinances of the Ministry of Justice.

### *Ordinary and Extraordinary General Meeting of Shareholders*

The Company usually holds its ordinary general meeting of shareholders in June of each year in Minato-ku, Tokyo or in a neighboring district. In addition, the Company may hold an extraordinary general meeting of shareholders whenever necessary by giving at least two weeks' prior notice. Under the Corporation Act of Japan and the Company's Articles of Incorporation and Share Handling Regulations, notice of any shareholders' meeting must be given to each shareholder having voting rights or, in the case of a non-resident shareholder, to his or her resident proxy or mailing address in Japan, at least two weeks prior to the date of the meeting.

### *Voting Rights*

A shareholder is generally entitled to one vote per one unit of shares as described in this paragraph and under "Rights of Shareholders - Japanese Unit Share System" above. In general, under the Corporation Act of Japan, a resolution can be adopted at a general meeting of shareholders by a majority of the shares having voting rights represented at the meeting. The Corporation Act of Japan and the Company's Articles of Incorporation require a quorum for the election of directors and Audit & Supervisory Board Members of not less than one-third of the total number of outstanding shares having voting rights. The Company's shareholders are not entitled to cumulative voting in the election of directors under the Company's Articles of Incorporation. A corporate shareholder whose operation can be substantially controlled by the Company based on the reasons such as that the Company directly or indirectly owns not less than one-quarter of the total voting rights of such shareholder does not have voting rights. Shareholders may exercise their voting rights through proxies in accordance with the Company's Articles of Incorporation, provided that those proxies are also shareholders who have voting rights.

Pursuant to the Corporation Act of Japan and the Company's Articles of Incorporation, a quorum of not less than one-third of the outstanding shares with voting rights must be present at a shareholders' meeting to approve any material corporate actions such as:

a reduction of stated capital;

amendment of the articles of incorporation (except amendments which the board of directors are authorized to make under the Corporation Act of Japan as described in "Rights of Shareholders - Stock Splits" and "Rights of Shareholders - Japanese Unit Share System" above);

establishment of a 100% parent-subsidary relationship by way of stock-for-stock exchange (*kabushiki kokan*) or stock-for-stock transfer (*kabushiki iten*);

a dissolution, merger or consolidation;

a corporate split;

the transfer of the whole or an important part of the Company's business;

taking over of the whole of the business of any other corporation; or,

## Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

any issuance of new shares at a specially favorable price, bonds or debentures with share acquisition rights to subscribe for new shares with specially favorable conditions or share acquisition rights with specially favorable conditions (otherwise than an allotment of the same to shareholders in proportion to shareholding), and the like.

At least two-thirds of the outstanding shares having voting rights present at the meeting must approve these actions.

The voting rights of holders of ADSs are exercised by the depositary based on instructions from those holders.

### *Share Acquisition Rights*

A Share Acquisition Right shall mean the right under which, upon the exercise thereof against the Company by a person who has such right (hereinafter referred to as a Share Acquisition Rights Holder ), the Company shall be obliged to issue new shares, or in lieu of such issuance, to transfer the shares that it owns, to such Share Acquisition Rights Holder.



---

## **Table of Contents**

The Company may basically issue Share Acquisition Rights as Share Acquisition Rights on their own or attached to bonds or debentures to any persons by the resolution of its Board of Directors. Holders of shares do not have the right to receive, upon the exercise thereof against the Company, an allotment of Share Acquisition Rights to be issued by the Company (hereinafter referred to as a Right to Subscribe for Share Acquisition Rights ) under the Company s Articles of Incorporation when it issues Share Acquisition Rights. Under the Corporation Act of Japan, the board of directors may, however, determine that shareholders be given Right to Subscribe for Share Acquisition Rights in connection with a particular issue of Share Acquisition Rights. In the case of an issue of Share Acquisition Rights, public or individual notice (public notice is basically made via internet on the Company s website) must be given to each of the shareholders at least two weeks prior to the allotment date unless the terms of such issuance are already disclosed in a securities registration statement or other disclosure document.

Share Acquisition Rights may be made transferable or nontransferable by the resolution of the board of directors under the Corporation Act of Japan.

### *Liquidation Rights*

In the event of liquidation, the assets remaining after payment of all debts, liquidation expenses and taxes will be distributed among the shareholders in proportion to the number of shares they own.

### *Liability to Further Calls or Assessments*

All of the Company s currently outstanding shares, including shares represented by the ADSs, are fully paid and nonassessable.

### *Transfer Agent*

Mitsubishi UFJ Trust and Banking Corporation ( Mitsubishi UFJ Trust ) is the transfer agent for the Company s shares. Mitsubishi UFJ Trust s office is located at 4-5, Marunouchi 1-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, Japan. Mitsubishi UFJ Trust maintains the Company s register of shareholders and records transfers of record ownership.

### *Record Date*

March 31 of each year is the record date for the Company s year-end dividends, if payable. September 30 of each year is the record date for its interim dividends, if payable. A holder of shares constituting one or more whole units who is registered as a holder on the Company s register of shareholders at the close of business as of March 31 is also entitled to exercise shareholders voting rights at the ordinary general meeting of shareholders with respect to the fiscal year ending on March 31. In addition, the Company may set a record date for determining the shareholders entitled to the rights by giving at least two weeks public notice which is basically made via internet on the Company s website.

The shares generally trade ex-dividends or ex-rights in the Japanese stock exchanges on the second business day before a record date (or if the record date is not a business day, the third business day prior thereto), for the purpose of dividends or rights offerings.

### *Acquisition of Own Shares*

Under the Corporation Act of Japan, the Company may acquire its own shares for any purposes subject to the authorization of shareholders at a general meeting of shareholders. In addition, the Company is authorized to purchase its own shares pursuant to a resolution of the Board of Directors pursuant to its Articles of Incorporation. The acquisition is generally subject to the condition that the aggregate amount of the purchase price must not exceed the distributable amount of surplus mentioned in Rights of Shareholders *Dividends from Surplus* above.

---

## **Table of Contents**

In the case of shares listed on a Japanese stock exchange or traded in the over-the-counter market, acquisition shall be made through the market or by way of tender offer by the close of the following ordinary general meeting, subject to certain exceptions such as where acquisition of the shares from a specified person is authorized by the approval of two-thirds of outstanding shares having voting rights present at the shareholders meeting at which a quorum of at least one-third of the outstanding shares having voting rights must be present.

In addition, the Company may acquire its shares by means of repurchase of any number of shares constituting less than one unit upon the request of the holder of those shares, as described under *Rights of Shareholders Japanese Unit Share System* above.

### *Holding of Shares by Foreign Investors*

Other than the Japanese unit share system that is described under *Rights of Shareholders Japanese Unit Share System* above, there are no limitations on the rights of non-residents or foreign shareholders to hold or exercise voting rights on the Company's shares imposed by the laws of Japan or the Company's Articles of Incorporation or other constituent documents.

## **C. Material Contracts**

All contracts entered into by the Company or any member of Komatsu during the two years immediately preceding this report were entered into in the ordinary course of business.

## **D. Exchange Controls**

### THE FOREIGN EXCHANGE AND FOREIGN TRADE LAW OF JAPAN

The Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law of Japan, as amended, and the cabinet orders and ministerial ordinances thereunder (collectively, the *Foreign Exchange Law*), regulate certain transactions involving a non-resident of Japan (as defined below) or a foreign investor (as defined below), including issuance of securities by a resident of Japan outside of Japan, transfer of securities between a resident of Japan and a non-resident of Japan, inward direct investment by a foreign investor, and a payment from Japan to a foreign country or by a resident of Japan to a non-resident of Japan.

Non-residents of Japan include individuals who are not resident in Japan and corporations whose principal offices are located outside of Japan. Generally, branches and other offices of Japanese corporations located outside of Japan are regarded as non-residents of Japan, but branches and other offices of non-resident corporations located within Japan are regarded as residents of Japan. Foreign investors are defined to be: (1) individuals not resident in Japan, (2) corporations which are organized under the laws of foreign countries or whose principal offices are located outside of Japan, (3) corporations of which not less than 50% of the voting rights are held directly or indirectly by (1) or (2) above, and (4) corporations in which: (a) a majority of the officers are non-resident individuals or (b) a majority of the officers having the power to represent the corporation are non-resident individuals.

The following is a summary of the pertinent provisions under the Foreign Exchange Law insofar as they affect debt securities of the Company, shares of the Company's common stock or depositary receipts representing such shares.

### Debt Securities

The Foreign Exchange Law requires that a resident of Japan whose debt securities are being issued or offered outside of Japan file a post facto report of capital transaction with the Minister of Finance. Under the Foreign Exchange Law, payment of the principal of and interest on these debt securities (including any additional amounts payable pursuant to the terms of the securities) may in general be made by the issuer without any restrictions. The Foreign Exchange Law gives the Minister of Finance the power in certain limited and exceptional circumstances to require prior approval for any such capital transaction (or for such payment).

---

## **Table of Contents**

### Acquisition of Shares

The Foreign Exchange Law requires that a resident of Japan whose shares are being issued or offered outside of Japan file a post facto report of capital transaction with the Minister of Finance.

In general, the acquisition of shares in a Japanese corporation listed on any stock exchange in Japan or traded on the over-the-counter market in Japan (the listed shares) from a resident of Japan by a non-resident of Japan requires the resident of Japan to file a post facto report with the Minister of Finance of the transaction. The Foreign Exchange Law gives the Minister of Finance the power in certain limited and exceptional circumstances to require prior approval for any such acquisition.

If a foreign investor intends to acquire the listed shares and as a result of such acquisition the aggregate of the shares in the relevant corporation already held by that foreign investor and certain related parties (as specified under the Foreign Exchange Law) and the number of such shares proposed to be acquired by that foreign investor would be 10% or more of the total issued shares, such foreign investor will generally be subject to a requirement to provide a post facto report to the Minister of Finance and any other competent Minister having jurisdiction over the business of the issuer by the 15th day of the month following the month in which it acquired such shares. In certain exceptional cases, prior notification may be required. In case the prior notification requirement is applicable, the Minister of Finance and the competent Minister will ultimately have the power to order the alternation or suspension of the acquisition in certain special circumstances.

While prior approval, as described above, is not required, in the case where a resident of Japan transfers shares of a Japanese company for consideration exceeding 100 million yen to a non-resident, the resident of Japan who transfers the shares is required to report the transfer to the Minister of Finance within 20 days from the date of the transfer, unless the transfer was made through a bank, securities company or financial futures trader licensed under Japanese law.

### Dividends and Proceeds of Sale

Under the Foreign Exchange Law, dividends paid on the shares of a Japanese corporation (including those in the form of depositary receipts) held by non-residents of Japan and the proceeds of any sale of such shares within Japan may in general be converted into any foreign currency and repatriated abroad. The acquisition of shares by non-resident shareholders by way of stock splits is not subject to any of the prior notification and/or post facto reporting requirements.

### Exercise or Transfer of Share Acquisition Rights

The acquisition by a foreign investor of shares in a Japanese corporation upon the exercise of acquisition rights in respect of share acquisition rights or bonds with share acquisition rights issued inside or outside of Japan is subject to the formalities and restrictions described in the second paragraph under Acquisitions of Shares above. However, if a foreign investor wishes to dispose of, rather than exercise, any acquisition rights, such foreign investor may sell the rights inside or outside of Japan without material foreign exchange restriction; provided that the resident of Japan who acquired such rights is in general subject to post facto reporting requirements.

### Depository Receipts

When shares are deposited with a depositary located outside of Japan and depositary receipts are issued in exchange therefore, the depositary is treated like any other foreign investor acquiring shares.

## THE FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS AND EXCHANGE LAW

The Financial Instruments and Exchange Law of Japan requires any person who has become, beneficially and solely or jointly, a holder of more than 5% of the total outstanding voting shares of capital stock of a company listed on any Japanese stock exchange to file with the relevant Local Finance Bureau of the Minister of Finance within five business days a report concerning such share ownership. A similar report must also be made in respect of any subsequent change of 1% or more in any such holding. Copies of any such report must also be furnished to the issuer of such shares and all Japanese stock exchanges on which the shares are listed. For this purpose, shares issuable exercise of rights for subscription of shares held by such holder are taken into account in determining both the size of a holding and a company's total outstanding share capital.

---

**Table of Contents****E. Taxation****JAPANESE TAXATION**

The discussion of Japanese taxation set forth below is intended only as a summary and does not purport to be a complete analysis or discussion of all the potential Japanese tax consequences that may be relevant to the ownership of the Company's shares or ADSs by a person who is not a resident of Japan.

A non-resident of Japan or a non-Japanese corporation is generally subject to a Japanese withholding tax on cash dividends. Stock splits and allotment of shares without consideration, in general, are not subject to Japanese withholding tax since they are characterized merely as an increase in the number of shares (as opposed to an increase in the value of the shares) from a Japanese tax perspective. Due to the 2001 Japanese tax legislation effective April 1, 2001, a conversion of retained earnings or legal earned reserve into stated capital is not deemed a dividend payment to shareholders for Japanese tax purposes and therefore such a conversion does not trigger Japanese withholding taxation.

In the absence of any applicable treaty or agreement reducing the maximum rate of withholding tax, the standard rate of Japanese withholding tax applicable to dividends paid by Japanese corporations to non-residents of Japan or non-Japanese corporations is generally 20%. However, with respect to dividends paid on listed shares issued by a Japanese corporation (such as the shares of common stock of the Company) to any corporate or individual shareholders (including those shareholders who are non-Japanese corporations or Japanese non-resident individuals), except for any individual shareholder who holds 5% or more of the total shares issued by the relevant Japanese corporation, the aforementioned standard 20% withholding tax rate is reduced to (i) 7% for dividends due and payable on or before December 31, 2013 and (ii) 15% for dividends due and payable on or after January 1, 2014.

Pursuant to the Convention Between the Government of the United States of America and the Government of Japan for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with Respect to Taxes on Income (the Treaty), (i) the withholding tax rate on dividends is generally 10% for portfolio investors who are qualified U.S. residents eligible to enjoy treaty benefits and (ii) the dividends are exempt from Japanese taxation by way of withholding or otherwise for pension funds which are qualified U.S. residents eligible to enjoy treaty benefits, unless the dividends are derived from the carrying on of a business, directly or indirectly, by such pension funds. For Japanese tax purposes, a treaty rate generally supersedes the tax rate under Japanese tax law. However, due to the so-called preservation doctrine under the Treaty, and/or due to the Special Measurement Law for the Income Tax Law, Corporation Tax Law and Local Taxes Law with respect to the Implementation of Tax Treaties, if the tax rate under Japanese tax law is lower than the treaty rate (which is currently the case with respect to the treaty), the Japanese tax rate applies (which, as discussed above, is currently 7% with respect to dividends paid on the Company's shares).

The amount of withholding tax imposed on dividends payable to the holders of the Company's shares or ADSs who reside in a country other than the United States is dependent upon the provisions of such treaties or agreements as may exist between such country and Japan.

Gains derived from the sale outside Japan of shares of common stock or ADSs by a non-resident of Japan or a non-Japanese corporation, or from the sale of the shares within Japan by a non-resident of Japan as an occasional transaction or by a non-Japanese corporation not having a permanent establishment in Japan, are in general not subject to Japanese income or corporation taxes. Japanese inheritance and gift taxes at progressive rates may be payable by an individual who has acquired shares of common stock or ADSs as a distributee, legatee or donee.

**Table of Contents**

## U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS

## General

The following is a summary of U.S. federal income tax consequences of the acquisition, ownership, and disposition of shares of common stock and ADSs of the Company to U.S. holders (as defined below). This summary does not purport to be a comprehensive description of all of the tax consequences of the acquisition, ownership and disposition of shares of common stock or ADSs. This summary applies only to shares of common stock and ADSs acquired by U.S. holders and held as capital assets, within the meaning of section 1221(a) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the Code), and does not apply to persons in special tax situations, including, but not limited to, a person with a functional currency other than the U.S. dollar, a person that actually or constructively owns 10% or more of the Company's voting stock, a tax-exempt organization, a bank, a financial institution, a real estate investment trust, a regulated investment company, a partnership or other flow-through entity, a dealer in securities or currencies, an insurance company, a securities trader electing to account for its investment in shares of common stock or ADSs on a mark-to-market basis, a person that owns shares of common stock or ADSs through a partnership or other entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes or through a flow-through entity, a person who acquired shares of common stock or ADSs pursuant to the exercise of any employee stock option or otherwise as compensation, or a person holding shares of common stock or ADSs in a hedging transaction or as part of a straddle or conversion transaction or other integrated financial transaction. In addition, this summary does not address the application, or the potential application, of the alternative minimum tax.

This discussion is based on current provisions of the Code, final, temporary and proposed U.S. Treasury regulations, judicial opinions, published positions of the Internal Revenue Service (the IRS) and other applicable authorities, all as in effect on the date hereof and all of which are subject to differing interpretations or change, possibly with retroactive effect. The Company has not sought, and will not seek, any ruling from the IRS or any opinion of counsel with respect to the tax consequences discussed herein, and there can be no assurance that the IRS will not take a contrary position or that any position taken by the IRS would not be sustained.

As used in this summary, the term U.S. holder means a beneficial owner of shares of common stock or ADSs of the Company that is for U.S. federal income tax purposes (i) a citizen or resident of the United States, (ii) a corporation (including an entity treated as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes) that is created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any State thereof or the District of Columbia, (iii) an estate the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income tax regardless of its source, or (iv) a trust if a court within the United States is able to exercise primary supervision over the administration of the trust and one or more United States persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust. Certain trusts not described in clause (iv) above in existence on August 20, 1996, that elect to be treated as United States persons will also be U.S. holders for purposes of the following discussion.

If a partnership is a beneficial owner of shares of common stock or ADSs, the treatment of a partner in the partnership generally will depend upon the status of the partner and the activities of the partnership. A beneficial owner of shares of common stock or ADSs that is a partnership and partners in such a partnership should consult their tax advisors regarding the U.S. federal income tax consequences of acquiring, owning, and disposing of shares of common stock or ADSs.

This discussion is only a summary of certain U.S. federal income tax consequences of the acquisition, ownership and disposition of shares of common stock or ADSs. Investors should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the particular tax consequences of the acquisition, ownership and disposition of shares of common stock or ADSs, including the effect of any state, local, foreign or other tax laws. In addition, this summary assumes that the Company has not been, is not currently, and will not be treated as a passive foreign investment company (a PFIC) for U.S. federal income tax purposes. See the discussion below under Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules.

## Treatment of ADSs

In general, a U.S. holder of ADSs evidencing shares of common stock will be treated as the beneficial owner of the underlying shares of common stock represented and evidenced by those ADSs for U.S. federal income tax purposes. Deposits or withdrawals of shares of common stock by U.S. holders in exchange for ADSs generally will not result in the recognition of gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

---

## **Table of Contents**

The United States Department of the Treasury (the "U.S. Treasury") has expressed concerns that U.S. holders of foreign securities may be claiming foreign tax credits in situations where an intermediary in the chain of ownership between the holder of a foreign security or an ADS and the issuer of the security has taken actions inconsistent with the ownership of the underlying security by the person claiming the credit, such as a disposition of such security. Such actions could also be inconsistent with the claiming of the reduced rate of tax applicable to dividends received by certain non-corporate U.S. holders. Accordingly, the analysis of the creditability of Japanese taxes and the availability of the reduced tax rate for dividends received by certain non-corporate U.S. holders, each as described below, could be affected by actions taken by the depositary or others or by future actions taken by the U.S. Treasury.

### **Taxation of Distributions on Shares of Common Stock or ADSs**

Subject to the discussion below under "Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules," the gross amount of distributions paid on shares of common stock or ADSs, other than certain pro rata distributions of shares of common stock, will generally be taxable as dividends to the extent paid out of the Company's current or accumulated earnings and profits (as determined under U.S. federal income tax principles). Because the Company does not maintain calculations of its earnings and profits under U.S. federal income tax principles, it is expected that distributions generally will be reported (where required) to U.S. holders as dividends. Such dividends will include any amounts withheld in respect of Japanese taxes and will not be eligible for the dividends-received deduction generally allowed to U.S. corporations.

Subject to applicable limitations that may vary depending upon a U.S. holder's individual circumstances (including with respect to certain short-term and hedged positions) and the discussion below under "Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules," dividends received by certain non-corporate U.S. holders in taxable years beginning before January 1, 2013 that constitute qualified dividend income will be taxable at a maximum rate of 15% provided that certain conditions are met. Non-corporate U.S. holders should consult their own tax advisors regarding the availability of the reduced rate and to determine whether they are subject to any special rules that limit their ability to be taxed at this reduced rate.

Dividends paid in a foreign currency, such as Japanese yen, will be included in a U.S. holder's income in a U.S. dollar amount calculated by reference to the exchange rate in effect on the date the dividend is actually or constructively received by the U.S. holder, in the case of shares of common stock, or by the depositary, in the case of ADSs, regardless of whether the payment is in fact converted into U.S. dollars on such date. A U.S. holder will have a tax basis in such foreign currency equal to the U.S. dollar value of the foreign currency calculated by reference to the exchange rate in effect on the date of such receipt. Gain or loss, if any, realized by a U.S. holder on a subsequent sale or other disposition of the foreign currency will be ordinary income or loss, and will be income or loss from sources within the United States for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes. Prospective investors should consult their own tax advisors concerning the calculation and U.S. federal income tax treatment of foreign currency gain or loss.

For foreign tax credit purposes, dividends included in gross income by a U.S. holder in respect of shares of common stock or ADSs will generally constitute income from sources outside the United States. Japanese income taxes withheld from dividends on shares of common stock or ADSs may be claimed by a U.S. holder as a credit against U.S. federal income tax liability or, in the alternative, as a deduction in the computation of such U.S. holder's taxable income, subject, in each case, to certain conditions and limitations. For U.S. foreign tax credit limitation purposes, dividends will generally be treated as "passive category income" or, in certain cases, "general category income." The U.S. federal income tax rules relating to foreign tax credits are extremely complex. U.S. holders should consult their own tax advisors concerning the availability of foreign tax credits based upon their particular situations.

### **Sales and Other Dispositions of Shares of Common Stock or ADSs**

Subject to the discussion below under "Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules," for U.S. federal income tax purposes, upon a sale or other taxable disposition of a share of common stock or an ADS, a U.S. holder will recognize gain or loss in an amount equal to the difference between the amount realized (determined in U.S. dollars) on the disposition and such U.S. holder's adjusted tax basis (determined in U.S. dollars) in the share of common stock or ADS (as the case may be). Any such gain or loss generally will constitute capital gain or loss, and will be long-term capital gain or loss if such U.S. holder held the share of common stock or the ADS (as the case may be) for more than one year as of the date of the disposition. The deduction of capital losses is subject to limitations under the Code. In addition, such gain or loss generally will be gain or loss from sources within the United States for foreign tax credit purposes.

---

## **Table of Contents**

### Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules

The Company believes that it should not be a PFIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes for its taxable year ended March 31, 2013. In general, the Company will be a PFIC for any taxable year in which (i) at least 75% of its gross income is passive income, or (ii) the average percentage of its assets, as determined under applicable provisions of U.S. federal income tax laws, during the taxable year which produce passive income or which are held for the production of passive income is at least 50%. Passive income for this purpose generally includes dividends, interest, royalties, rents, annuities, gains from commodities and securities transactions and certain other types of income. The PFIC determination is made annually and generally will depend upon the composition of the Company's income and assets. There can be no assurance that the Company has not been, is not or will not be considered a PFIC for any taxable year. If the Company were treated as a PFIC for any taxable year during which a U.S. holder held shares of common stock or ADSs, certain adverse tax consequences could apply to such U.S. holder. If the Company were treated as a PFIC for any taxable year during which you held shares of common stock or ADSs, the Company generally will continue to be treated as a PFIC for all succeeding years during which you hold such shares of common stock or ADSs.

If the Company were treated as a PFIC for any taxable year during which a U.S. holder held shares of common stock or ADSs, any gain recognized by the U.S. holder on the disposition of such shares of common stock or ADSs as well as any excess distribution received by the U.S. holder (i.e., generally, any distribution in respect of shares of common stock or ADSs in excess of 125% of the average of the annual distributions on such securities received by a U.S. holder during the preceding three taxable years or such U.S. holder's holding period, whichever is shorter) would be allocated ratably to each day in the U.S. holder's holding period for such securities. The amount of any such gain or excess distribution allocable to the year of the disposition or distribution or to any year before the Company became a PFIC will be taxed as ordinary income. The amount of any such gain or distribution allocable to taxable years in which the Company was a PFIC and thereafter, other than the year of the disposition or distribution, would be subject to tax at the highest rate in effect in each such taxable year for individuals or corporations, as appropriate, and an interest charge would be imposed on the tax liability attributable to such allocated amounts.

Certain elections (including a mark-to-market election) may be available to a U.S. holder that may mitigate the adverse tax consequences resulting from PFIC status. However, if the Company were to be treated as a PFIC, U.S. holders may not be able to mitigate the adverse tax consequences resulting from PFIC status by electing to treat the Company as a qualified electing fund because the Company may not provide the information that a U.S. holder requires to make such an election.

In addition, if the Company were treated as a PFIC in a taxable year in which it pays a dividend or the prior taxable year, the 15% tax rate with respect to qualified dividend income, discussed above under Taxation of Distributions on Shares of Common Stock or ADSs, would not apply.

U.S. holders should consult their own tax advisors regarding the potential application of the PFIC rules to shares of common stock or ADSs.

### Information Reporting and Backup Withholding

In general, information reporting requirements will apply to distributions on shares of common stock and ADSs, and to the proceeds received on the disposition of shares of common stock and ADSs paid within the United States (and in certain cases, outside the United States), unless an exemption is established. A backup withholding tax at the applicable statutory rate may apply to such amounts if a U.S. holder (i) fails to establish properly that such U.S. holder is entitled to an exemption, (ii) fails to furnish or certify a correct taxpayer identification number to the payor in the manner required, (iii) is notified by the IRS that such U.S. holder has failed to report payments of interest or dividends properly, or (iv) under certain circumstances, fails to certify that such U.S. holder has not been notified by the IRS that backup withholding applies due to the failure to report interest or dividend payments. The amount of any backup withholding will be allowed as a credit against or refund of the U.S. holder's U.S. federal income tax liability provided that the required information is furnished to the IRS in a timely manner.

## **Table of Contents**

In addition, certain U.S. holders are required to report information with respect to their investments in the shares of common stock or ADSs not held through an account with a U.S. financial institution to the IRS. If such a U.S. holder fails to report information required, such U.S. holder could become subject to substantial penalties. U.S. holders are encouraged to consult with their own tax advisors regarding the possible implications of this legislation on their investment in the shares of common stock or ADSs.

The preceding summary of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations is for general information only and is not intended to be construed as tax advice. Accordingly, prospective investors should consult their own tax advisors as to the particular tax consequences to them of the acquisition, ownership and disposition of shares of common stock and ADSs, including the applicability and effect of any U.S. federal, state, local or foreign tax laws, and of any proposed changes in applicable law.

### **F. Dividends and Paying Agents**

Not applicable.

### **G. Statements by Experts**

Not applicable.

### **H. Documents on Display**

The Company is subject to the informational requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. In accordance with these requirements, the Company files annual reports on Form 20-F and other reports on Form 6-K with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"). These materials, including this annual report and exhibits thereto, may be inspected and copied at the SEC's Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. The public may obtain information on the operation of the Public Reference Room by calling the SEC in the U.S. at 1-800-SEC-0330. The materials filed via the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system are also available for inspection on the SEC's website (<http://www.sec.gov>).

### **I. Subsidiary Information**

Not applicable.



**Table of Contents****Item 11. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk**

## Market Risk Exposure

Komatsu is exposed to market risk primarily from changes in foreign currency exchange rates and interest rates with respect to its international operations and foreign currency denominated receivables and debts. In order to manage these risks that arise in the normal course of its business, Komatsu has entered into various derivative financial transactions pursuant to its policies and procedures. Komatsu does not enter into derivative financial transactions for trading or speculative purposes. Komatsu is exposed to credit-related losses in the event of nonperformance by counterparties to the derivative financial instruments. However, because of the counterparties' credit ratings, Komatsu does not expect that any of its existing counterparties will default on their obligations.

## Foreign Exchange Risk

To reduce foreign exchange risks against foreign currency denominated assets, liabilities and certain forecasted transactions, Komatsu executes forward exchange contracts in a range of 50% to 100% based on its projected cash flow in foreign currencies. The following table provides information concerning derivative financial instruments of Komatsu in relation to foreign currency exchange transactions that existed as of March 31, 2013, which are translated into Japanese yen at the rate used on that date, together with the related weighted average contractual exchange rates as of March 31, 2013.

Forward Exchange Contracts

## Forwards to sell

Millions of yen (except average contractual rates)

foreign currencies:	US\$/Yen	Yuan/Yen	CLP/US\$	SEK/EUR	Others	Total
Contract amounts	¥ 63,493	¥ 29,325	¥ 13,541	¥ 6,433	¥ 17,268	¥ 130,060
Average contractual rates	86.92Yen/US\$	12.43Yen/Yuan	0.0021US\$/CLP	0.12SEK/EUR		
Fair value	¥ (4,740)	¥ (4,090)	¥ (40)	¥ (192)	¥ 543	¥ 358

## Forwards to buy

Millions of yen (except average contractual rates)

foreign currencies:	US\$/ZAR	US\$/RUB	GBP/EUR	Yen/ZAR	EUR/US\$	Others	Total
Contract amounts	¥ 6,554	¥ 4,322	¥ 3,983	¥ 3,712	¥ 3,594	¥ 17,739	¥ 39,904
Average contractual rates	0.11US\$/ZAR	0.03US\$/RUB	0.85GBP/EUR	9.7Yen/ZAR	0.79EUR/US\$		
Fair value	¥ 145	¥ 86	¥ 33	¥ (104)	¥ 25	¥ (550)	¥ (365)

Almost all of the above forward exchange contracts are expected to mature during the fiscal year ending March 31, 2014.

**Table of Contents**

Interest Rate Risk

To reduce interest rate risk, Komatsu has engaged in certain interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and transactions for interest payments and interest receipts. Certain interest rate swap contracts are not qualified as hedges for financial reporting purposes and are recorded at the fair value with the gains and losses thereof recognized as income and expense.

The following tables provide information concerning long-term debt excluding capital lease obligations (including those obligations that are due within one year), interest rate swaps and cross-currency swaps. For debt obligations, the tables present the weighted average interest rate, fair value and principal cash flows by expected maturity dates. For interest rate swaps and cross-currency swaps, the following tables present the weighted average receive and pay interest rates, fair value and notional amounts.

**Long-term debt excluding capital lease obligations (including due within one year)**

	Average interest rate	Fair value	Total	2014	Millions of yen Expected maturity ending March 31				
					2015	2016	2017	2018	Thereafter
Japanese yen bonds	0.91%	¥ 118,137	¥ 120,000	¥ 30,000	¥ 30,000	¥	¥ 30,000	¥ 30,000	¥
Euro medium-term notes (relating to variable interest rate)	1.66%	80,734	79,581	5,564	21,019	33,435	13,261	6,302	
Loans, principally from banks (relating to variable interest rate)	4.96%	96,194	96,194	46,361	25,195	24,529	35	30	44
Loans, principally from banks (relating to fixed interest rate)	1.54%	164,403	167,703	44,082	39,770	52,914	26,024	4,688	225
<b>Total</b>		<b>¥ 459,468</b>	<b>¥ 463,478</b>	<b>¥ 126,007</b>	<b>¥ 115,984</b>	<b>¥ 110,878</b>	<b>¥ 69,320</b>	<b>¥ 41,020</b>	<b>¥ 269</b>

**Interest rate swaps and cross-currency swaps**

	Average interest rate		Fair value	Total	2014	Millions of yen Expected maturity ending March 31				
	Receive	Pay				2015	2016	2017	2018	Thereafter
AUD interest rate swap	3.12%	4.19%	¥ (1,015)	¥ 65,686	¥ 19,920	¥ 13,873	¥ 12,125	¥ 11,170	¥ 8,585	¥ 13
Euro interest rate swap	0.35%	2.09%	(347)	21,868	8,618	6,200	4,742	2,159	149	
Yen/EUR cross-currency swap	0.61%	0.48%	(163)	6,100	5,200	900				
US\$/CLP cross-currency swap	1.04%	3.90%	(234)	5,976	594	1,778	1,439	1,599	566	
U.S. dollar interest rate swap	1.11%	2.16%	(33)	3,111	837	843	955	139	337	
Others			(2)	441	301	40	43	45	12	
<b>Total</b>			<b>¥ (1,794)</b>	<b>¥ 103,182</b>	<b>¥ 35,470</b>	<b>¥ 23,634</b>	<b>¥ 19,304</b>	<b>¥ 15,112</b>	<b>¥ 9,649</b>	<b>¥ 13</b>

For additional information about derivative financial instruments, see Note 19 to the Consolidated Financial Statements included elsewhere in this report.

**Table of Contents****Item 12. Description of Securities Other than Equity Securities****A. Debt Securities**

Not applicable.

**B. Warrants and Rights**

Not applicable.

**C. Other Securities**

Not applicable.

**D. American Depositary Shares***Fees and Charges for Holders of American Depositary Receipts*

The Bank of New York Mellon, as depositary for the Company's ADSs (the "Depositary"), collects its fees for delivery and surrender of ADSs directly from investors depositing shares or surrendering ADSs for the purpose of withdrawal, or from intermediaries acting for them. The Depositary collects fees for making distributions to investors by deducting those fees from the amounts distributed or by selling a portion of distributable property to pay the fees. The Depositary may collect its annual fee for depositary services by deducting such fee from cash distributions, by directly billing investors or by charging the book-entry system accounts of participants acting for them. The Depositary may generally refuse to provide services until its fees for those services are paid.

The below table sets forth the fees that an investor depositing or withdrawing shares must pay to the Depositary for certain services:

Investor depositing or withdrawing shares must pay:	For:
\$5.00 (or less) per 100 ADSs (or portion of 100 ADSs)	Issuance of ADSs, including issuances resulting from a distribution, sale or exercise of shares or rights or other property Cancellation of ADSs for the purpose of withdrawal including if the depositary agreement is terminated
\$0.02 (or less) per ADS	Any cash distribution to ADS registered holders
A fee equivalent to the fee that would be payable if securities distributed had been shares and the shares had been deposited for issuance of ADSs	Distribution of securities distributed to holders of deposited securities which are distributed by the Depositary to ADS registered holders
Registration fees	Registration of transfer of shares on Komatsu's share register to the name of the depositary or its nominee or the custodian or its nominee when shares are deposited or withdrawn
Expenses of the Depositary	Cable, telex, and facsimile transmissions (when expressly provided in the depositary agreement) Converting foreign currency to US dollars
Taxes and other governmental charges the Depositary or custodian must pay on any ADSs or shares underlying ADSs	As necessary

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, the Depositary paid the Company \$30,000 for standard out-of-pocket maintenance costs for the ADRs (consisting of the expenses for postage and envelopes for mailing annual and interim financial reports, printing and distributing dividend checks, electronic filings of U.S. Federal tax information, mailing required tax forms, stationary, postage, facsimile and telephone calls) and expenses relating to the Company's annual general shareholders' meeting that are incurred with respect to the Company's ADR holders.

*Fees to be Paid in the Future*

The Depositary has agreed to reimburse the Company for expenses incurred by the Company that relate to the establishment and maintenance of the ADR program. The Depositary has also agreed to pay the standard out-of-pocket maintenance costs for the ADRs, which consist of the expenses for postage and envelopes for mailing annual and interim financial reports, printing and distributing dividend checks, electronic filings

## Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

of U.S. Federal tax information, mailing required tax forms, stationary, postage, facsimile and telephone calls. The Depositary has also agreed to reimburse the Company annually for certain investor relations programs or special investor relations promotional activities. While there are limits on the amount of expenses for which the Depositary will reimburse the Company for these investor relations activities, the amount of reimbursement available to the Company is not necessarily tied to the amount of fees the Depositary collects from investors.

---

**Table of Contents**

**PART II**

**Item 13. Defaults, Dividend Arrearages and Delinquencies**

None.

**Item 14. Material Modifications to the Rights of Security Holders and Use of Proceeds**

None.

**Item 15. Controls and Procedures**

*Evaluation of disclosure controls and procedures*

Komatsu's management performed an evaluation of the effectiveness of the design and operation of its disclosure controls and procedures (as such term is defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended) under the supervision and with the participation of its Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer. Based on Komatsu's evaluation, the Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer have concluded that as of March 31, 2013, the end of the period covered by this report, the disclosure controls and procedures were adequate and effective.

*Management's annual report on internal control over financial reporting*

The management of Komatsu is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting (as such term is defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended). Komatsu's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of its financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with U.S. GAAP. Komatsu's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of Komatsu, (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary for the financial statements to be prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP, and that receipts and expenditures of Komatsu are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of Komatsu and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of Komatsu's assets that could have a material effect on its financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate. Management assessed the effectiveness of Komatsu's internal control over financial reporting as of March 31, 2013. In making this assessment, management used the criteria set forth by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission in Internal Control - Integrated Framework.

Based on its assessment, management concluded that, as of March 31, 2013, Komatsu's internal control over financial reporting was effective.

Komatsu's independent registered public accountant firm has issued an audit report on the effectiveness of Komatsu's internal control over financial reporting as of March 31, 2013, which is included elsewhere in this document.

*Changes in internal control over financial reporting*

There has been no change in Komatsu's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the period covered by this annual report that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, its internal control over financial reporting.

---

**Table of Contents**

**Item 16. Reserved**

**Item 16A. Audit Committee Financial Expert**

The Audit & Supervisory Board of the Company has determined that Mr. Makoto Morimoto qualifies as an audit committee financial expert as such term is defined under the rules of the SEC. Mr. Morimoto meets the independence requirements imposed on the Audit & Supervisory Board Members under the Corporation Act of Japan. Mr. Morimoto has long engaged in accounting-related duties at the Company, and has extensive experience and expertise regarding financial affairs and accounting matters. Mr. Morimoto began his career at Komatsu in 1977, and since that time has worked in the field of finance and accounting for more than thirty years. Mr. Morimoto served as the General Manager of the Corporate Accounting Dept. from 2004 to 2006, the General Manager of the Corporate Controlling Dept. from 2006 to 2008 and the General Manager of the Internal Audit Dept. from 2008 to 2012.

Mr. Morimoto was elected as one of the Audit & Supervisory Board Members of the Company at the ordinary general meeting of shareholders held in June 2012. See Item 6.A. for additional information regarding Mr. Morimoto.

**Item 16B. Code of Ethics**

In order to ensure that Komatsu's business is conducted honestly, ethically and in compliance with applicable laws, rules and regulations by its senior officers (including directors, executive officers, presidents of divisions, general managers of administrative departments at the Company as well as managers of the Finance & Treasury and Corporate Accounting departments at the Company), Komatsu has adopted the Code of Ethics for Senior Officers that stipulates the ethical duties and rules of conduct that its senior officers are required to comply with. This Code of Ethics for Senior Officers has been filed as Exhibit 11 hereto.

In addition, beginning in 1998, Komatsu has published a booklet entitled Komatsu's Code of Worldwide Business Conduct. Komatsu distributes this booklet to all of its worldwide employees and management officers in order to ensure that they understand how important it is to observe the rules of the business community. The content of the latest edition of this booklet published in April 2011 is available on the Company's website at <http://www.komatsu.com/CompanyInfo/profile/conduct/>.

No amendments have been made to the Code of Ethics for Senior Officers during or after the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013.

**Table of Contents****Item 16C. Principal Accountant Fees and Services**

## Audit and Non-Audit Fees

KPMG AZSA LLC and the various member firms of KPMG International served as Komatsu's principal independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013 and 2012. Set forth below are the fees for services rendered by KPMG AZSA LLC and the various member firms of KPMG International for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013 and 2012.

	Millions of Yen	
	<b>Fiscal Year ended March 31,</b>	
	<b>2013</b>	<b>2012</b>
Audit fees	¥ 1,606	¥ 1,616
Audit-related fees	13	11
Tax fees	24	34
All other fees	13	29
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 1,656</b>	<b>¥ 1,690</b>

Audit fees include fees billed for services rendered in connection with the audit of Komatsu's annual consolidated financial statements, the review of consolidated quarterly financial statements and the review of associated documents filed with regulatory organizations.

Audit-related fees include fees billed for due diligence services related to mergers and acquisitions, agreed-upon or expanded audit procedures and the review of Komatsu's internal control procedures.

Tax fees include fees billed for tax compliance, the review of tax return documents, documentation relating to transfer pricing, and international and domestic indirect tax.

All other fees consist of fees for all other services not included in any of the above categories, such as advisory services relating to the accounting manual.

**Pre-Approval Policies and Procedures of the Audit & Supervisory Board**

In accordance with the SEC rules regarding auditor independence, the Audit & Supervisory Board of the Company has established pre-approval policies and procedures for audit and non-audit services that are provided by its principal independent registered public accounting firm. These policies and procedures apply when the Company and/or its consolidated subsidiaries wish to engage an accounting firm for audit services and when the Company and/or its consolidated subsidiaries wish to engage the principal independent registered public accounting firm for permissible non-audit services.

When engaging an accounting firm for audit services, pre-approval is required prior to the commencement of such services. Similarly, when engaging the principal independent registered public accounting firm for permissible non-audit services (i.e., audit-related services, tax services and all other services), pre-approval must be obtained prior to the commencement of the services.

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, no services were provided for which pre-approval was waived pursuant to paragraph (c)(7)(i)(C) of Rule 2-01 of Regulation S-X.

**Table of Contents**

**Item 16D. Exemptions from the Listing Standards for Audit Committees**

Not applicable.

**Item 16E. Purchases of Equity Securities by the Issuer and Affiliated Purchasers**

Not applicable.

**Item 16F. Change in Registrant's Certifying Accountant**

Not applicable.

**Item 16G. Corporate Governance**

Not applicable.

**Item 16H. Mine Safety Disclosure**

Not applicable.



**Table of Contents**

**PART III**

**Item 17. Financial Statements**

Not applicable.

**Item 18. Financial Statements**

See Consolidated Financial Statements attached hereto.

**Item 19. Exhibits**

- 1.1 Articles of Incorporation of Komatsu Ltd., as amended (Translation)
- 1.2 Regulations of The Board of Directors (Translation)
- 2 Share Handling Regulations, as amended (Translation)
- 8 Significant subsidiaries of Komatsu Ltd., including additional subsidiaries that management has deemed to be significant, as of March 31, 2013 (See Item 4. Information on the Company Organizational Structure )
- 11 Code of Ethics for Senior Officers (Translation)
- 12 a. Certification of the CEO of the Company required pursuant to Rule 15d-14(a).
- 12 b. Certification of the CFO of the Company required pursuant to Rule 15d-14(a).
- 13 a. Certification of the CEO of the Company required pursuant to Rule 15d-14(b) and Section 1350 of Chapter 63 of Title 18 of the United States Code.
- 13 b. Certification of the CFO of the Company required pursuant to Rule 15d-14(b) and Section 1350 of Chapter 63 of Title 18 of the United States Code.
- 101 Instance Document
- 101 Schema Document
- 101 Calculation Linkbase Document
- 101 Definition Linkbase Document
- 101 Labels Linkbase Document
- 101 Presentation Linkbase Document

**Table of Contents**

**SIGNATURES**

The registrant hereby certifies that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form 20-F and that it has duly caused and authorized the undersigned to sign this annual report on its behalf.

Date: June 28, 2013

**KOMATSU LTD.**

By: /s/ Mikio Fujitsuka  
Mikio Fujitsuka  
Director and Senior Executive Officer,  
Chief Financial Officer

**Table of Contents**

KOMATSU LTD. AND CONSOLIDATED SUBSIDIARIES

INDEX TO

CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

<u>Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u>	F-2 to F-3
<u>Consolidated Balance Sheets as of March 31, 2013 and 2012</u>	F-4
<u>Consolidated Statements of Income and Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for the Years Ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011</u>	F-5
<u>Consolidated Statements of Equity For the Years Ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011</u>	F-6
<u>Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows For the Years Ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011</u>	F-7
<u>Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</u>	F-8 to F-65

F-1

**Table of Contents**

**Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

The Board of Directors and Shareholders

Komatsu Ltd.:

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Komatsu Ltd. and subsidiaries as of March 31, 2013 and 2012, and the related consolidated statements of income, comprehensive income, equity and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended March 31, 2013. These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Komatsu Ltd. and subsidiaries as of March 31, 2013 and 2012, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended March 31, 2013, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), Komatsu Ltd.'s internal control over financial reporting as of March 31, 2013, based on criteria established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO), and our report dated June 28, 2013 expressed an unqualified opinion on the effectiveness of Komatsu Ltd.'s internal control over financial reporting.

/s/ KPMG AZSA LLC

Tokyo, Japan

June 28, 2013

---

**Table of Contents**

**Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

The Board of Directors and Shareholders

Komatsu Ltd.:

We have audited the internal control over financial reporting of Komatsu Ltd. as of March 31, 2013, based on criteria established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in the accompanying Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting, which appears in Item 15. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audit also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

In our opinion, Komatsu Ltd. maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of March 31, 2013, based on criteria established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the consolidated balance sheets of Komatsu Ltd. and subsidiaries as of March 31, 2013 and 2012, and the related consolidated statements of income, comprehensive income, equity and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended March 31, 2013, and our report dated June 28, 2013 expressed an unqualified opinion on those consolidated financial statements.

/s/ KPMG AZSA LLC

Tokyo, Japan

June 28, 2013

**Table of Contents**Consolidated Balance Sheets

Komatsu Ltd. and Consolidated Subsidiaries

March 31, 2013 and 2012

Assets	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
<b>Current assets</b>		
Cash and cash equivalents (Notes 9 and 20)	¥ 93,620	¥ 83,079
Time deposits (Note 20)	217	907
Trade notes and accounts receivable (Notes 4, 7 and 20)	606,904	559,749
Inventories (Note 5)	633,647	612,359
Deferred income taxes and other current assets (Notes 9, 15, 19, 20, 21 and 23)	157,668	144,278
<b>Total current assets</b>	<b>1,492,056</b>	<b>1,400,372</b>
<b>Long-term trade receivables</b> (Notes 4 and 20)	<b>235,825</b>	<b>184,294</b>
<b>Investments</b>		
Investments in and advances to affiliated companies (Note 7)	19,404	20,565
Investment securities (Notes 6, 20 and 21)	59,279	54,192
Other	2,574	2,582
<b>Total investments</b>	<b>81,257</b>	<b>77,339</b>
<b>Property, plant and equipment</b> less accumulated depreciation and amortization (Notes 8, 9 and 16)	<b>585,220</b>	<b>529,656</b>
<b>Goodwill</b> (Note 10)	<b>34,703</b>	<b>31,229</b>
<b>Other intangible assets</b> less accumulated amortization (Note 10)	<b>58,523</b>	<b>57,953</b>
<b>Deferred income taxes and other assets</b> (Notes 12, 15, 19, 20 and 21)	<b>30,273</b>	<b>39,686</b>
	<b>¥ 2,517,857</b>	<b>¥ 2,320,529</b>

Liabilities and Equity	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
<b>Current liabilities</b>		
Short-term debt (Notes 9, 11 and 20)	¥ 205,156	¥ 215,824
Current maturities of long-term debt (Notes 11, 16 and 20)	130,793	119,457
Trade notes, bills and accounts payable (Notes 7 and 20)	226,275	273,460
Income taxes payable (Note 15)	33,227	23,195
Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities (Notes 12, 15, 19, 20, 21 and 23)	232,125	231,774
<b>Total current liabilities</b>	<b>827,576</b>	<b>863,710</b>
<b>Long-term liabilities</b>		
Long-term debt (Notes 11, 16 and 20)	343,814	312,519
Liability for pension and retirement benefits (Note 12)	49,912	50,685
Deferred income taxes and other liabilities (Notes 15, 19, 20 and 21)	43,860	36,158

<b>Total long-term liabilities</b>	<b>437,586</b>	399,362
<b>Total liabilities</b>	<b>1,265,162</b>	1,263,072
<b>Commitments and contingent liabilities</b> (Note 18)		
<b>Equity</b>		
<b>Komatsu Ltd. shareholders equity</b> (Note 13)		
Common stock:		
Authorized 3,955,000,000 shares		
Issued 983,130,260 shares		
Outstanding 952,778,859 shares in 2013 and 952,261,022 shares in 2012	<b>67,870</b>	67,870
Capital surplus	<b>138,818</b>	138,384
Retained earnings:		
Appropriated for legal reserve	<b>38,230</b>	37,954
Unappropriated	<b>1,034,504</b>	951,395
Accumulated other comprehensive loss (Notes 6, 12, 14, 19 and 21)	<b>(43,440)</b>	(142,389)
Treasury stock at cost,		
30,351,401 shares in 2013 and 30,869,238 shares in 2012	<b>(42,788)</b>	(43,518)
<b>Total Komatsu Ltd. shareholders equity</b>	<b>1,193,194</b>	1,009,696
<b>Noncontrolling interests</b>	<b>59,501</b>	47,761
<b>Total equity</b>	<b>1,252,695</b>	1,057,457
	<b>¥ 2,517,857</b>	¥ 2,320,529

The accompanying Notes are an integral part of these Consolidated Financial Statements.

**Table of Contents**Consolidated Statements of Income and Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income

Komatsu Ltd. and Consolidated Subsidiaries

Years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011

Consolidated Statements of Income

	2013	Millions of yen 2012	2011
Net sales (Note 7)	¥ 1,884,991	¥ 1,981,763	¥ 1,843,127
Cost of sales (Notes 10, 12, 16, 19 and 24)	1,377,459	1,440,765	1,343,464
Selling, general and administrative expenses (Notes 3, 10, 12, 13, 16 and 24)	293,520	282,335	264,691
Impairment loss on long-lived assets (Note 24)	1,907	3,106	5,142
Other operating income (expenses), net (Note 24)	(503)	786	(6,901)
<b>Operating income</b>	<b>211,602</b>	256,343	222,929
<b>Other expenses, net</b> (Note 24)			
Interest and dividend income (Note 7)	4,277	3,776	4,493
Interest expense	(8,236)	(7,784)	(6,475)
Other, net (Notes 3, 6, 19 and 21)	(3,040)	(2,726)	(1,138)
Total	(6,999)	(6,734)	(3,120)
<b>Income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies</b>	<b>204,603</b>	249,609	219,809
<b>Income taxes</b> (Note 15)			
Current	74,628	66,420	57,923
Deferred	(5,539)	8,050	6,783
Total	69,089	74,470	64,706
<b>Income before equity in earnings of affiliated companies</b>	<b>135,514</b>	175,139	155,103
<b>Equity in earnings of affiliated companies</b>	<b>1,621</b>	1,609	2,724
<b>Net income</b>	<b>137,135</b>	176,748	157,827
<b>Less: Net income attributable to noncontrolling interests</b>	<b>10,814</b>	9,707	7,075
<b>Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd.</b>	<b>¥ 126,321</b>	¥ 167,041	¥ 150,752

	Yen		
<b>Per share data</b> (Note 17):			
<b>Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd.:</b>			
Basic	132.64	173.47	155.77
Diluted	132.51	173.32	155.66
<b>Cash dividends per share</b>	<b>45.00</b>	41.00	26.00

The accompanying Notes are an integral part of these Consolidated Financial Statements.



Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income

	Millions of yen		
	2013	2012	2011
<b>Net income</b>	<b>¥ 137,135</b>	¥ 176,748	¥ 157,827
<b>Other comprehensive income (loss), for the period, net of tax</b>			
Foreign currency translation adjustments (Notes 14 and 15)	<b>99,195</b>	(8,952)	(39,529)
Net unrealized holding gains on securities available for sale (Notes 6, 14 and 15)	<b>4,690</b>	725	1,978
Pension liability adjustments (Notes 12, 14 and 15)	<b>1,440</b>	(1,943)	(91)
Net unrealized holding gains (losses) on derivative instruments (Notes 14, 15 and 19)	<b>555</b>	(1,506)	(26)
<b>Total other comprehensive income (loss), for the period, net of tax</b>	<b>105,880</b>	(11,676)	(37,668)
<b>Comprehensive income</b>	<b>243,015</b>	165,072	120,159
Less: Comprehensive income attributable to noncontrolling interests	<b>17,745</b>	9,395	4,839
<b>Comprehensive income attributable to Komatsu Ltd.</b>	<b>¥ 225,270</b>	¥ 155,677	¥ 115,320

The accompanying Notes are an integral part of these Consolidated Financial Statements.

**Table of Contents**Consolidated Statements of Equity

Komatsu Ltd. and Consolidated Subsidiaries

Years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011

	Millions of yen								
	Common stock	Capital surplus	Retained earnings Appropriated for legal reserve	Unappropriated	Accumulated other comprehensive loss	Treasury stock	Total Komatsu Ltd. shareholders equity	Non-controlling interests	Total equity
Balance at March 31, 2010	¥ 67,870	¥ 140,421	¥ 31,983	¥ 724,090	¥ (95,634)	¥ (34,755)	¥ 833,975	¥ 42,824	¥ 876,799
Cash dividends				(25,178)			(25,178)	(994)	(26,172)
Transfer to retained earnings appropriated for legal reserve			2,511	(2,511)					
Other changes		(51)			7		(44)	2,168	2,124
Comprehensive income (loss)									
Net income				150,752			150,752	7,075	157,827
Other comprehensive income (loss), for the period, net of tax									
Foreign currency translation adjustments (Notes 14 and 15)					(37,237)		(37,237)	(2,292)	(39,529)
Net unrealized holding gains on securities available for sale (Notes 6, 14 and 15)					1,978		1,978		1,978
Pension liability adjustments (Notes 12, 14 and 15)					(91)		(91)		(91)
Net unrealized holding gains (losses) on derivative instruments (Notes 14, 15 and 19)					(82)		(82)	56	(26)
Comprehensive income							115,320	4,839	120,159
Issuance and exercise of stock acquisition rights (Note 13)		109					109		109
Purchase of treasury stock						(583)	(583)		(583)
Sales of treasury stock		44				200	244		244
Balance at March 31, 2011	¥ 67,870	¥ 140,523	¥ 34,494	¥ 847,153	¥ (131,059)	¥ (35,138)	¥ 923,843	¥ 48,837	¥ 972,680
Cash dividends				(39,701)			(39,701)	(6,447)	(46,148)
Transfer to retained earnings appropriated for legal reserve			3,460	(3,460)					
Other changes		(245)			34		(211)	(4,024)	(4,235)
Comprehensive income (loss)									
Net income				167,041			167,041	9,707	176,748
Other comprehensive income (loss), for the period, net of tax									
Foreign currency translation adjustments (Notes 14 and 15)					(8,759)		(8,759)	(193)	(8,952)
Net unrealized holding gains on securities available for sale (Notes 6, 14 and 15)					725		725		725
Pension liability adjustments (Notes 12, 14 and 15)					(1,930)		(1,930)	(13)	(1,943)
Net unrealized holding gains (losses) on derivative instruments (Notes 14, 15 and 19)					(1,400)		(1,400)	(106)	(1,506)

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Comprehensive income						155,677	9,395	165,072	
Issuance and exercise of stock acquisition rights (Note 13)	699					699		699	
Purchase of treasury stock (Note 13)					(31,118)	(31,118)		(31,118)	
Sales of treasury stock	(13)				520	507		507	
Retirement of treasury stock (Note 13)	(2,580)		(19,638)		22,218				
<b>Balance at March 31, 2012</b>	<b>¥ 67,870</b>	<b>¥ 138,384</b>	<b>¥ 37,954</b>	<b>¥ 951,395</b>	<b>¥ (142,389)</b>	<b>¥ (43,518)</b>	<b>¥ 1,009,696</b>	<b>¥ 47,761</b>	<b>¥ 1,057,457</b>
Cash dividends				(42,877)		(42,877)	(5,958)	(48,835)	
Transfer to retained earnings appropriated for legal reserve			276	(276)					
Other changes							(47)	(47)	
Comprehensive income (loss)									
Net income				126,321		126,321	10,814	137,135	
Other comprehensive income (loss), for the period, net of tax									
Foreign currency translation adjustments (Notes 14 and 15)					92,176	92,176	7,019	99,195	
Net unrealized holding gains on securities available for sale (Notes 6, 14 and 15)				4,690		4,690		4,690	
Pension liability adjustments (Notes 12, 14 and 15)				1,503		1,503	(63)	1,440	
Net unrealized holding gains (losses) on derivative instruments (Notes 14, 15 and 19)					580	580	(25)	555	
Comprehensive income						225,270	17,745	243,015	
Issuance and exercise of stock acquisition rights (Note 13)	434					434		434	
Purchase of treasury stock					(32)	(32)		(32)	
Sales of treasury stock				(59)		762	703	703	
<b>Balance at March 31, 2013</b>	<b>¥ 67,870</b>	<b>¥ 138,818</b>	<b>¥ 38,230</b>	<b>¥ 1,034,504</b>	<b>¥ (43,440)</b>	<b>¥ (42,788)</b>	<b>¥ 1,193,194</b>	<b>¥ 59,501</b>	<b>¥ 1,252,695</b>

The accompanying Notes are an integral part of these Consolidated Financial Statements.

**Table of Contents**Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows

Komatsu Ltd. and Consolidated Subsidiaries

Years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011

	Millions of yen		
	2013	2012	2011
<b>Operating activities</b>			
Net income	¥ 137,135	¥ 176,748	¥ 157,827
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization	89,322	90,106	89,467
Deferred income taxes	(5,539)	8,050	6,783
Impairment loss and net loss (gain) from sale of investment securities	3,058	2,516	54
Net gain on sale of property	(567)	(915)	(2,807)
Loss on disposal of fixed assets	1,867	2,108	1,928
Impairment loss on long-lived assets	1,907	3,106	5,142
Pension and retirement benefits, net	(979)	1,536	(3,795)
Changes in assets and liabilities:			
Decrease (increase) in trade receivables	(21,656)	(21,862)	(147,477)
Decrease (increase) in inventories	42,040	(137,354)	(97,790)
Increase (decrease) in trade payables	(54,347)	(38,207)	101,595
Increase (decrease) in income taxes payable	9,407	(15,185)	17,876
Other, net	12,397	34,961	21,599
<b>Net cash provided by operating activities</b>	<b>214,045</b>	<b>105,608</b>	<b>150,402</b>
<b>Investing activities</b>			
Capital expenditures	(142,992)	(126,090)	(100,820)
Proceeds from sale of property	11,436	8,364	9,605
Proceeds from sale of available for sale investment securities	3,766	1,757	2,132
Purchases of available for sale investment securities	(11)	(1,457)	(1,379)
Acquisition of subsidiaries and equity investees, net of cash acquired	(5,051)	(8,649)	976
Collection of loan receivables	706	2,101	1,926
Disbursement of loan receivables	(50)	(440)	(1,236)
Decrease (increase) in time deposits, net	799	(125)	287
<b>Net cash used in investing activities</b>	<b>(131,397)</b>	<b>(124,539)</b>	<b>(88,509)</b>
<b>Financing activities</b>			
Proceeds from debt issued (Original maturities greater than three months) (Note 2)	292,013	352,731	148,147
Payment on debt (Original maturities greater than three months) (Note 2)	(392,647)	(260,212)	(133,800)
Short-term debt net (Original maturities three months or less) (Note 2)	84,823	54,405	(20,015)
Repayments of capital lease obligations	(6,591)	(45,271)	(28,637)
Sale (purchase) of treasury stock, net	38	(30,680)	175
Dividends paid	(42,877)	(39,701)	(25,178)
Other, net	(6,573)	(12,491)	2,943
<b>Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities</b>	<b>(71,814)</b>	<b>18,781</b>	<b>(56,365)</b>
<b>Effect of exchange rate change on cash and cash equivalents</b>	<b>(293)</b>	<b>(995)</b>	<b>(3,733)</b>
<b>Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents</b>	<b>10,541</b>	<b>(1,145)</b>	<b>1,795</b>

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

<b>Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of year</b>	<b>83,079</b>	84,224	82,429
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, end of year</b>	<b>¥ 93,620</b>	¥ 83,079	¥ 84,224

The accompanying Notes are an integral part of these Consolidated Financial Statements.

F-7

---

**Table of Contents**

**Notes to Consolidated Statements**

**Komatsu Ltd. and Consolidated Subsidiaries**

**Years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011**

**1. Description of Business, Basis of Financial Statement Presentation and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies**

**Description of Business**

Komatsu Ltd. ( Company ) and subsidiaries (together Komatsu ) primarily manufacture and market various types of construction, mining and utility equipment throughout the world. Komatsu is also engaged in the manufacture and sale of industrial machinery and others.

The consolidated net sales of Komatsu for the year ended March 31, 2013, consisted of the following: Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment 89.0%, Industrial Machinery and Others 11.0%.

Sales are made principally under the Komatsu brand name, and are almost entirely executed through sales subsidiaries and sales distributors. These subsidiaries and distributors are responsible for marketing and distribution and primarily sell to retail dealers in their geographical area. Of consolidated net sales for the year ended March 31, 2013, 79.8% were generated outside Japan, with 29.8% in the Americas, 10.8% in Europe and CIS, 8.3% in China, 24.1% in Asia (excluding Japan and China) and Oceania, and 6.8% in the Middle East and Africa.

The manufacturing operations of Komatsu are conducted primarily at plants in Japan, United States, Germany, United Kingdom, Sweden, Indonesia, Brazil, Italy, and China.

**Basis of Financial Statement Presentation**

The accompanying consolidated financial statements are prepared and presented in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America.

The accompanying consolidated financial statements are stated in Japanese yen, the currency of the country in which the Company is incorporated and principally operates.

**Summary of Significant Accounting Policies**

**(1) Consolidation and Investments in Affiliated Companies**

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and all of its majority-owned domestic and foreign subsidiaries, except for certain immaterial subsidiaries.

Variable interest entities are consolidated in which the Company is the primary beneficiary in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board ( FASB ) Accounting Standards Codification ( ASC ) 810, Consolidation . The consolidated balance sheets as of March 31, 2013 and 2012, include assets of ¥30,467 million and ¥26,609 million, respectively, of consolidated variable interest entities, which engage in equipment leasing in Europe. The majority of these assets are trade notes and accounts receivable, and long-term trade receivables.

Investments in affiliated companies whereby Komatsu has the ability to exercise significant influence over the operational and financial policies of a company, but does not have a controlling financial interest, are accounted for by the equity method.

## **Table of Contents**

### **(2) Foreign Currency Translation and Transactions**

Assets and liabilities of foreign operations are translated at the exchange rates in effect at each fiscal year-end, and income and expenses of foreign operations are translated at the average rates of exchange prevailing during each fiscal year in consolidating the financial statements of overseas subsidiaries. The resulting translation adjustments are included as a separate component of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) in the accompanying consolidated financial statements. All foreign currency transaction gains and losses are included in other expenses, net in the period incurred.

### **(3) Allowance for Doubtful Trade Receivables**

Komatsu records allowance for doubtful receivables as the best estimate of the amount of probable credit losses in Komatsu's existing receivables including financing receivables. The amount is determined based on historical experience, credit information of individual customers, and assessment of overdue receivables. An additional allowance for individual receivables is recorded when Komatsu becomes aware of a customer's inability to meet its financial obligations, such as in the case of bankruptcy filings or deterioration of the customer's business performance. The amount of estimated credit losses is further adjusted to reflect changes in customer circumstances.

### **(4) Inventories**

Inventories are stated at the lower of cost or market. Komatsu determines cost of work in process and finished products using the specific identification method based on actual costs accumulated under a job-order cost system. The cost of finished parts is determined principally using the first-in first-out method. Cost of materials and supplies is stated at average cost.

### **(5) Investment Securities**

Komatsu's investments in debt and marketable equity securities are categorized as available-for-sale securities which are stated at fair value. Changes in fair values are included as a separate component of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) in the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

Unrealized losses on marketable securities are charged against net earnings when a decline in market value below initial cost is determined to be other than temporary based primarily on the financial condition and near term prospects of the issuer and the extent and length of the time of the decline.

Non-marketable equity securities are carried at cost. In assessing other-than-temporary impairment of these securities, Komatsu considers the financial condition and prospects of each investee company and other relevant factors. Impairment to be recognized is measured based on the amount by which the carrying amount of the investment securities exceeds its estimated fair value which is regularly determined using discounted cash flows or other valuation techniques considered appropriate.

**Table of Contents****(6) Property, Plant and Equipment, and Related Depreciation and Amortization**

Property, plant and equipment are stated at cost, less accumulated depreciation. Depreciation is calculated principally by the declining-balance method at rates based on the estimated useful lives of the assets. The estimated useful lives used in computing depreciation of property, plant and equipment are as follows:

Asset	Life
Buildings	4 to 50 years
Machinery and equipment	2 to 20 years

Certain leased machinery and equipment are accounted for as capital leases. The aggregate cost included in property, plant and equipment and related accumulated amortization as of March 31, 2013 and 2012 were as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Aggregate cost	¥ 23,184	¥ 27,409
Accumulated amortization	14,468	16,527

Accumulated amortization related to capital leases is included in accumulated depreciation.

Ordinary maintenance and repairs are charged to expense as incurred. Major replacements and improvements are capitalized. When properties are retired or otherwise disposed of, the costs of those properties and the related accumulated depreciation are relieved from the consolidated balance sheets and the differences between the costs of those properties and the related accumulated depreciation are recognized in other operating income (expenses), net of the consolidated statements of income.

**(7) Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets**

Komatsu uses the acquisition method of accounting for business combinations. Goodwill is tested for impairment at least annually. Any recognized intangible assets determined to have an indefinite useful life are not to be amortized, but instead tested for impairment at least annually until its life is determined to no longer be indefinite. Intangible assets with finite useful lives are amortized over their respective estimated useful lives and reviewed for impairment whenever there is an indicator of possible impairment. An impairment loss would be recognized when the carrying amount of an asset or an asset group exceeds the estimated undiscounted cash flows expected to be generated by the asset or an asset group. The amount of the impairment loss to be recorded is determined by the difference between the fair value of the asset or an asset group using a discounted cash flow valuation model and carrying value.



## **Table of Contents**

### **(8) Revenue Recognition**

Komatsu recognizes revenue when (1) persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, (2) delivery has occurred or services have been rendered for customers or dealers, (3) sales price is fixed or determinable, and (4) collectability is reasonably assured.

Revenue from sales of products including construction, mining and utility equipment and industrial machinery is recognized when title and risk of ownership is transferred to independently owned and operated customers or dealers, which occur upon the attainment of customer acceptance or when installation is completed. The conditions of acceptance are governed by the terms of the contract or arrangement. For arrangements with multiple elements, which may include any combination of products, installation and maintenance, Komatsu allocates revenue to each element based on its relative fair value if such elements meet the criteria for treatment as a separate unit of accounting. When Komatsu enters into a separate contract to render transportation or technical advice, principally related to a sale of mining equipment and large-sized industrial machinery such as large presses, these service revenues are accounted for separately from the product sale and recognized at the completion of the service delivery specified in the contract.

Service revenues from repair and maintenance and from transportation are recognized at the completion of service-delivery. Revenues from long-term fixed price maintenance contracts are recognized ratably over the contract period.

Certain consolidated subsidiaries rent construction equipment to customers. Rent revenue is recognized on a straight-line basis over the rental period.

Revenues are recorded net of discounts. In addition, taxes collected from customers and remitted to governmental-authorities on revenue-producing transactions are accounted for on a net basis and therefore are excluded from revenues in the consolidated statements of income.

### **(9) Income Taxes**

Income taxes are accounted for under the asset and liability method. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases and operating loss and tax credit carryforwards. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences and carryforwards are expected to be realized or settled. The effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is recognized in income in the period that includes the enactment date.

If a tax position meets the more-likely-than-not recognition threshold based on the technical merits of the position, Komatsu recognizes the benefit of such position in the financial statements. The benefit of the tax position is measured at the largest amount of benefit that is greater than 50 percent likely of being realized upon settlement with appropriate taxing authority.

### **(10) Product Warranties**

Komatsu establishes a liability for estimated product warranty cost at the time of sale. Estimates for accrued product warranty cost are primarily based on historical experience and are classified as other current liabilities and other liabilities.

### **(11) Pension and Retirement Benefits**

Komatsu recognizes the overfunded or underfunded status of the defined benefit plans as an asset or liability in the consolidated balance sheet, with a corresponding adjustment to accumulated other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax.

Amortization of actuarial net gain or loss is included as a component of Komatsu's net periodic pension cost for defined benefit plans for a year if, as of the beginning of the year, that unrecognized net gain or loss exceeds 10 percent of the greater of (1) the projected benefit obligation or (2) the fair value of that plan's assets.

In such case, the amount of amortization recognized is the resulting excess divided by average remaining service period of active employees expected to receive benefits under the plan. The expected return on plan assets is determined based on the historical long-term rate of return on plan assets. The discount rate is determined based on the rates of return of high-quality fixed income investments currently available and expected to be available during the period to maturity of the pension benefits.



## **Table of Contents**

### **(12) Share-Based Compensation**

Komatsu recognizes share-based compensation expense using the fair value method. Compensation expense is measured at grant-date fair value of the share-based award and charged to expense over the vesting period.

### **(13) Per Share Data**

Basic net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. per share has been computed by dividing net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. by the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding during each fiscal year, after deducting treasury shares. Diluted net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. per share reflects the potential dilution computed on the basis that all stock options were exercised (less the number of treasury shares assumed to be purchased from proceeds using the average market price of the Company's common shares) to the extent that each is not antidilutive.

Dividends per share shown in the accompanying consolidated statements of income are based on dividends approved and paid in each fiscal year.

### **(14) Cash and Cash Equivalents**

Cash and cash equivalents include highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less at the date of purchase.

Our foreign subsidiaries participate in a global cash pooling arrangement with a single financial institution, which is used to fund short-term liquidity needs. This arrangement contains specific provisions for the right to offset positive and negative cash balances on a global basis. The facility allows for cash withdrawals from this financial institution based upon our aggregate cash deposits within the same financial institution. Komatsu's consolidated Balance Sheets as of March 31, 2013 and 2012 reflect cash net of withdrawals of ¥57,568 million and ¥28,823 million respectively.

### **(15) Derivative Financial Instruments**

Komatsu uses various derivative financial instruments to manage its interest rate and foreign exchange exposure.

All derivatives, including derivatives embedded in other financial instruments, are measured at fair value and recognized as either assets or liabilities on the consolidated balance sheet. Changes in the fair values of derivative instruments not designated or not qualifying as hedges and any ineffective portion of qualified hedges are recognized in earnings in the current period. Changes in the fair values of derivative instruments which qualify as fair value hedges are recognized in earnings, along with changes in the fair value of the hedged item. Changes in the fair value of the effective portions of cash flow hedges are reported in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss), and recognized in earnings when the hedged item is recognized in earnings.

### **(16) Impairment of Long-Lived Assets and Long-Lived Assets to be Disposed of**

Long-lived assets and certain identifiable intangibles to be held and used by Komatsu are reviewed for impairment based on a cash flow analysis of the asset or an asset group whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset or an asset group may not be recoverable. The assets to be held for use are considered to be impaired when estimated undiscounted cash flows expected to result from the use of the assets and their eventual disposition is less than their carrying amounts. The impairment losses are measured as the amount by which the carrying amount of the asset or an asset group exceeds the fair value. Long-lived assets and identifiable intangibles to be disposed of are reported at the lower of carrying amount or fair value less cost to sell.

## **Table of Contents**

### **(17) Use of Estimates**

Komatsu has made a number of estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses presented in consolidated financial statements prepared in conformity with U.S. GAAP. Actual results could differ from the estimates and assumptions.

Komatsu has identified several areas where it believes estimates and assumptions are particularly critical to the financial statements. These are the determination of the useful lives of Property, Plant and Equipment, the allowance for doubtful receivables, impairment of long-lived assets and goodwill, pension liabilities and expenses, product warranty liabilities, fair value of financial instruments, realization of deferred tax assets, income tax uncertainties and other contingencies. The current economic environment has increased the degree of uncertainty inherent in those estimates.

### **(18) Recently Adopted Accounting Standards**

In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, Komatsu adopted the Accounting Standards Update ( ASU ) 2011-05, Presentation of Comprehensive Income . The Update requires an entity to report comprehensive income either in a single continuous financial statement (one-statement approach) or in two separate but consecutive statements (two-statement approach). ASU2011-12, Deferral of the Effective Date for Amendments to the Presentation of Reclassifications of Items out of Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income in ASU 2011-05 deferred the effective date for implementing the presentation of reclassification adjustments out of accumulated comprehensive income to the reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2012.

Komatsu has elected the two-statement approach, which has been applied retrospectively for all periods presented.

**Table of Contents****2. Supplemental Cash Flow Information**

Additional cash flow information and noncash investing and financing activities for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, are as follows:

	2013	Millions of yen 2012	2011
<b>Additional cash flow information:</b>			
Interest paid	¥ 8,554	¥ 7,309	¥ 6,367
Income taxes paid	59,438	87,134	46,227
<b>Noncash investing and financing activities:</b>			
Capital lease obligations incurred	¥ 3,286	¥ 2,300	¥ 2,244

Amounts reported in the other, net of net cash provided by operating activities in the accompanying consolidated statements of cash flows for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 included a decrease of ¥16,856 million, an increase of ¥18,352 million and an increase of ¥12,297 million in advances received respectively.

In the consolidated statements of cash flow, Komatsu disclosed its cash flow of short-term debt in financing activities on a net amount basis until the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012. From the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, Komatsu discloses its cash flow on a net amount basis for the debts whose original maturities are three months or less. The consolidated statements of cash flow for fiscal years ended March 31, 2012 and 2011 have been re-presented to be consistent with the March 31, 2013 presentation. This change does not have any impact on the reported total cash flow from financing activities.

**Table of Contents****3. Business Combinations****(1) Log Max AB and Log Max, Inc.**

On November 30, 2012, Komatsu Forest AB (hereinafter "KFAB"), the Company's wholly owned subsidiary acquired all of the equity interests in Log Max AB and Log Max, Inc., for ¥6,782 million from Log Max International Holding AB. Through this acquisition, Log Max AB and Log Max, Inc., became wholly owned subsidiaries of KFAB.

Log Max AB, is a Swedish-based manufacturer of forest machine attachments such as harvester heads and Log Max, Inc. is its U.S. sales arm. Harvester heads manufactured by Log Max AB and KFAB are mutually complementary in types of harvesting and tree sizes and Komatsu expects synergies through the sales expansion of forestry machines. Goodwill recognized is attributable primarily to expected synergies.

The allocation of fair value to the acquired assets and assumed liabilities under ASC 805, "Business Combinations" was completed in the year ended March 31, 2013.

Following is a summary of the assets acquired and liabilities adjusted to reflect purchase price allocation assumed as of the date of acquisition.

	Millions of yen
<b>Consideration</b>	
Cash and cash equivalents	¥ 6,782
<b>Fair value of total consideration transferred</b>	<b>6,782</b>
Acquisition-related cost (included in selling, general and administrative expenses)	¥ 298
<b>Recognized amounts of identifiable assets and liabilities assumed</b>	
Current assets	¥ 2,340
Property, plant and equipment	50
Intangible assets	3,758
Other assets	16
<b>Total assets acquired</b>	<b>6,164</b>
<b>Current liabilities</b>	<b>(492)</b>
Long-term liabilities	(931)
<b>Total liabilities assumed</b>	<b>(1,423)</b>
<b>Net assets acquired</b>	<b>4,741</b>
<b>Goodwill</b>	<b>2,041</b>
	¥ 6,782

The goodwill of ¥2,041 million was assigned to the Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment segment. The goodwill is not deductible for tax purpose.

The amounts of sales and income of Log Max AB and Log Max, Inc. included in Komatsu's consolidated income statement since the date of acquisition for the year ended March 31, 2013 were immaterial.

Assuming this acquisition had been made at the beginning of any prior annual reporting periods, the consolidated pro forma results would not be materially different from reported results.



**Table of Contents****(2) Gigaphoton Inc.**

On May 18, 2011, the Company acquired additional 50,000 shares of Gigaphoton Inc. (hereinafter "Gigaphoton") for cash consideration of ¥7,500 million.

Prior to the additional acquisition, the Company held a 50.0% equity interest in Gigaphoton and accounted for the investment by the equity method. As a result of the additional investment, the Company's ownership increased to 100.0% and Gigaphoton became a consolidated subsidiary of the Company.

Gigaphoton was established by Ushio Inc. (hereinafter "Ushio") and the Company as a 50-50 joint-venture company to develop, manufacture, sell and service excimer laser light sources for lithography tools in August 2000.

To develop an extreme ultraviolet light source, Ushio and Gigaphoton have been working on different methods. Because Gigaphoton and Ushio will be competing on the same market, Ushio and the Company have decided to terminate the joint-venture agreement. As a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company, Gigaphoton is expected further expand its conventional excimer laser business and also accelerate the pace of research and development by teaming up with the Company to create an extreme ultraviolet light source as the basis for next-generation lithography tools.

Following is a summary of the assets acquired and liabilities assumed adjusted to reflect purchase price allocation as of the date of acquisition:

	Millions of yen
<b>Consideration</b>	
Cash and cash equivalents	¥ 7,500
<b>Fair value of total consideration transferred</b>	<b>7,500</b>
Fair value of Komatsu's equity interest in Gigaphoton held before the business combination	7,500
	¥ 15,000
Acquisition-related cost (included in selling, general and administrative expenses)	¥ 36
<b>Recognized amounts of identifiable assets and liabilities assumed</b>	
Current assets	¥ 14,859
Property, plant and equipment	2,376
Intangible assets	7,425
Other assets	15
Total assets acquired	24,675
Current liabilities	(7,860)
Long-term liabilities	(2,896)
<b>Total liabilities assumed</b>	<b>(10,756)</b>
Net assets acquired	13,919
<b>Goodwill</b>	<b>1,081</b>
	¥ 15,000

The goodwill of ¥1,081 million was assigned to the Industrial Machinery and Others operating segment. The goodwill is not deductible for tax purposes.



## Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

As a result of remeasuring to fair value its 50% equity interest in Gigaphoton held before the business combination, a gain of ¥2,592 million was recorded in other expenses, net in the accompanying consolidated statement of income for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012.

The amounts of Gigaphoton's sales and net income included in Komatsu's consolidated income statement since the date of acquisition of the additional 50.0% equity interest for the year ended March 31, 2012 were immaterial.

Assuming this acquisition had been made at the beginning of the prior annual reporting period, the consolidated pro forma results would not be materially different from reported results.

**Table of Contents****4. Trade Notes and Accounts Receivable**

Receivables at March 31, 2013 and 2012 are summarized as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Trade notes	¥ 121,423	¥ 108,390
Accounts receivable	502,141	464,884
<b>Total</b>	<b>623,564</b>	573,274
Less: allowance-current	(16,660)	(13,525)
<b>Trade notes and accounts receivable</b>	<b>¥ 606,904</b>	¥ 559,749
Long-term trade receivables, gross	237,159	186,012
Less: allowance-noncurrent	(1,334)	(1,718)
<b>Long-term trade receivables</b>	<b>235,825</b>	184,294

Installment and lease receivables (less unearned interest) are included in trade notes and accounts receivable and long-term trade receivables.

The roll-forward schedule of the allowance for credit losses of the financing receivables for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 are as follows:

	Millions of yen		
	2013	2012	2011
Balance at beginning of year	¥ 7,750	¥ 7,474	¥ 7,550
Provision	1,094	1,256	2,277
Charge-offs	(794)	(1,004)	(1,855)
Other	1,144	24	(498)
<b>Balance at end of year</b>	<b>¥ 9,194</b>	¥ 7,750	¥ 7,474

Past due financing receivables at March 31, 2013 and 2012 were not material.

Equipment sales revenue from sales-type leases is recognized at the inception of the lease. At March 31, 2013 and 2012, lease receivables comprised the following:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Minimum lease payments receivable	¥ 225,463	¥ 232,798
Unearned income	(19,252)	(21,839)
<b>Net lease receivables</b>	<b>¥ 206,211</b>	¥ 210,959

The residual values of leased assets at March 31, 2013 and 2012 were not material.

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Komatsu did not have any cash flows from securitization activities from the sale of trade notes and accounts receivable for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2013 and 2012.

F-17

---

**Table of Contents****5. Inventories**

At March 31, 2013 and 2012, inventories comprised the following:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Finished products, including finished parts held for sale	¥ 437,729	¥ 422,001
Work in process	141,166	141,302
Materials and supplies	54,752	49,056
Total	¥ 633,647	¥ 612,359

**Table of Contents****6. Investment Securities**

Investment securities at March 31, 2013 and 2012, primarily consisted of securities available for sale.

Unrealized holding gains and losses are included as a component of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) until realized.

The cost, gross unrealized holding gains and losses, and fair value for such investment securities by major security types at March 31, 2013 and 2012, are as follows:

	Cost	Millions of yen Gross unrealized holding		Fair value
		Gains	Losses	
<b>At March 31, 2013</b>				
Investment securities:				
Marketable equity securities available for sale	¥ 17,915	¥ 33,047	¥ 8	¥ 50,954
Other investment securities at cost	8,325			
	¥ 26,240			
<b>At March 31, 2012</b>				
Investment securities:				
Marketable equity securities available for sale	¥ 19,890	¥ 26,072	¥ 29	¥ 45,933
Other investment securities at cost	8,259			
	¥ 28,149			

Other investment securities primarily include non-marketable equity securities.

Proceeds from the sale of investment securities available for sale were ¥3,766 million, ¥1,757 million and ¥2,132 million for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

Impairment loss and net gain (loss) from sale of investment securities available for sale during the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, amounted to losses of ¥3,058 million, ¥2,516 million and ¥54 million, respectively. Such losses were included in other expense, net in the accompanying consolidated statements of income. The cost of the investment securities sold was computed based on the average cost method.

Gross unrealized holding losses and the fair value of available-for-sale securities, aggregated by length of time that individual securities have been in a continuous unrealized loss position at March 31, 2013 and 2012, are as follows:

	Less than 12 months		Millions of yen 12 months or longer		Total	
	Fair value	Gross unrealized holding losses	Fair value	Gross unrealized holding losses	Fair value	Gross unrealized holding losses
<b>At March 31, 2013</b>						
Investment securities:						
Marketable equity securities available for sale	¥ 190	¥ 8	¥	¥	¥ 190	¥ 8

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

**At March 31, 2012**

Investment securities:

Marketable equity securities available for sale	¥ 272	¥	29	¥	¥	¥ 272	¥	29
---	-------	---	----	---	---	-------	---	----

Komatsu judged the decline in fair value of investment securities at year end to be temporary, by considering such factors as financial and operating condition of issuer, the industry in which the issuer operates and other relevant factors.

F-19

**Table of Contents****7. Investments in and Advances to Affiliated Companies**

At March 31, 2013 and 2012, investments in and advances to affiliated companies comprised the following:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Investments in capital stock	¥ 18,862	¥ 19,737
Advances	542	828
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 19,404</b>	<b>¥ 20,565</b>

The investments in and advances to affiliated companies relate to the companies whereby Komatsu has the ability to exercise significant influence over the operational and financial policies, but not a controlling financial interest.

Dividends received from affiliated companies were ¥400 million, ¥566 million and ¥469 million during the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, respectively.

Trade notes and accounts receivable from affiliated companies at March 31, 2013 and 2012, were ¥22,417 million and ¥23,439 million, respectively.

Short-term loans receivable from affiliated companies at March 31, 2013 and 2012, were ¥565 million and ¥664 million, respectively.

Trade notes and accounts payable to affiliated companies at March 31, 2013 and 2012, were ¥8,879 million and ¥8,396 million, respectively.

Net sales to affiliated companies for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, were ¥52,785 million, ¥51,848 million and ¥42,673 million, respectively.

Intercompany profits (losses) have been eliminated in the consolidated financial statements.

As of March 31, 2013 and 2012, consolidated unappropriated retained earnings included Komatsu's share of undistributed earnings of affiliated companies accounted for by the equity method in the amount of ¥7,496 million and ¥9,721 million, respectively.

The difference between the carrying value of the investments in affiliated companies and Komatsu's equity in the underlying net assets of such affiliated companies is insignificant as of March 31, 2013 and 2012.

Summarized financial information for affiliated companies at March 31, 2013 and 2012, and for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, is as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Current assets	¥ 118,422	¥ 108,919
Net property, plant and equipment less accumulated depreciation and amortization	39,318	38,415
Investments and other assets	34,533	33,291
<b>Total assets</b>	<b>¥ 192,273</b>	<b>¥ 180,625</b>
Current liabilities	¥ 92,642	¥ 85,235
Noncurrent liabilities	47,517	43,238
Equity	52,114	52,152

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Total liabilities and equity ¥ 192,273    ¥ 180,625

	2013	Millions of yen	
		2012	2011
Net sales	¥ 185,381	¥ 196,328	¥ 208,959
Net income	¥ 4,090	¥ 3,351	¥ 5,602

F-20



**Table of Contents****8. Property, Plant and Equipment**

The major classes of property, plant and equipment at March 31, 2013 and 2012, are as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Land	¥ 107,168	¥ 97,943
Buildings	389,484	353,486
Machinery and equipment	772,526	712,578
Construction in progress	22,339	21,897
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,291,517</b>	<b>1,185,904</b>
Less: accumulated depreciation and amortization	(706,297)	(656,248)
<b>Net property, plant and equipment</b>	<b>¥ 585,220</b>	<b>¥ 529,656</b>

**Table of Contents**

**9. Pledged Assets**

At March 31, 2013 and 2012, assets pledged as collateral for short-term debt and guarantees for debt are as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Cash and cash equivalents	¥ 3	¥ 2
Other current assets	1,682	2,279
Property, plant and equipment less accumulated depreciation and amortization	788	
Total	¥ 2,473	¥ 2,281

The above assets were pledged against the following liabilities:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Appearing in the consolidated balance sheets as:		
Short-term debt	¥ 788	
Guarantees for debt	1,685	¥ 2,281
Total	¥ 2,473	¥ 2,281

**Table of Contents****10. Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets**

Intangible assets other than goodwill at March 31, 2013 and 2012 are as follows:

	Millions of yen					
	2013		2012			
	Gross carrying amount	Accumulated amortization	Net carrying amount	Gross carrying amount	Accumulated amortization	Net carrying amount
<b>Other intangible assets subject to amortization:</b>						
Software	¥ 33,026	¥ (19,983)	¥ 13,043	¥ 34,221	¥ (19,759)	¥ 14,462
Leasehold	7,499	(734)	6,765	8,834	(1,818)	7,016
Other	36,808	(12,930)	23,878	34,898	(11,525)	23,373
<b>Total</b>	<b>77,333</b>	<b>(33,647)</b>	<b>43,686</b>	<b>77,953</b>	<b>(33,102)</b>	<b>44,851</b>
Other intangible assets not subject to amortization			14,837			13,102
<b>Total other intangible assets</b>			<b>¥ 58,523</b>			<b>¥ 57,953</b>

Net carrying amounts of other in intangible assets subject to amortization mainly consist of customer relationships of ¥1,088 million and technology assets of ¥5,056 million resulting from the acquisition of additional shares of Gigaphoton for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 and customer relationships of ¥10,115 million and technology assets of ¥3,230 million resulting from the acquisition of additional shares of Komatsu NTC Ltd. for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2008.

The aggregate amortization expense of other intangible assets subject to amortization for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 were ¥8,477 million, ¥8,499 million and ¥8,149 million, respectively. The future estimated amortization expenses for each of five years relating to intangible assets currently recorded in the consolidated balance sheet are as follows:

Year ending March 31	Millions of yen
2014	¥ 6,784
2015	5,727
2016	4,420
2017	3,647
2018	2,643

**Table of Contents**

The changes in carrying amounts of goodwill for the years ended March 31, 2013 and 2012 were as follow:

	Millions of yen		
	Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment segment	Industrial Machinery and Others segment	Total
<b>Balance at March 31, 2011</b>			
Goodwill	¥ 24,098	¥ 13,942	¥ 38,040
Accumulated impairment losses	(8,179)	(540)	(8,719)
	¥ 15,919	¥ 13,402	¥ 29,321
Goodwill acquired during the year	1,278	1,081	2,359
Foreign exchange impact	(445)		(445)
Other		(6)	(6)
<b>Balance at March 31, 2012</b>			
Goodwill	24,931	15,017	39,948
Accumulated impairment losses	(8,179)	(540)	(8,719)
	¥ 16,752	¥ 14,477	¥ 31,229
Goodwill acquired during the year	2,041		2,041
Foreign exchange impact	1,433		1,433
<b>Balance at March 31, 2013</b>			
Goodwill	<b>28,405</b>	<b>15,017</b>	<b>43,422</b>
Accumulated impairment losses	<b>(8,179)</b>	<b>(540)</b>	<b>(8,719)</b>
	<b>¥ 20,226</b>	<b>¥ 14,477</b>	<b>¥ 34,703</b>

**Table of Contents****11. Short-Term and Long-Term Debt**

Short-term debt at March 31, 2013 and 2012, consisted of the following:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Banks, insurance companies and other financial institutions	¥ 164,156	¥ 170,824
Commercial paper	41,000	45,000
Short-term debt	¥ 205,156	¥ 215,824

The weighted-average annual interest rates applicable to short-term debt outstanding at March 31, 2013 and 2012, were 1.9% and 3.0%, respectively. Certain consolidated subsidiaries have entered into contracts for committed credit lines totaling ¥49,997 million and have unused committed lines of credit amounting to ¥14,738 million with certain financial institutions at March 31, 2013, which are available for full and immediate borrowings. The Company is party to a committed ¥150,000 million commercial paper program and unused committed commercial paper program amounting to ¥109,000 million at March 31, 2013, is available upon the satisfaction of certain customary procedural requirements. Long-term debt at March 31, 2013 and 2012, consisted of the following:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Long-term debt without collateral:		
Banks, insurance companies and other financial institutions, maturing serially through 2013-2018, weighted-average rate 3.0%	¥ 260,536	¥ 240,629
Euro Medium-Term Notes maturing serially through 2013-2017, weighted-average rate 1.7%	80,734	56,098
1.66% Unsecured Bonds due 2012		20,000
0.85% Unsecured Bonds due 2012		10,000
1.53% Unsecured Bonds due 2013	30,000	30,000
1.19% Unsecured Bonds due 2014	30,000	30,000
0.58% Unsecured Bonds due 2016	30,000	30,000
0.32% Unsecured Bonds due 2017	30,000	
Capital lease obligations (Note 16)	9,976	12,536
Other	3,361	2,713
Total	474,607	431,976
Less: current maturities	(130,793)	(119,457)
Long-term debt	¥ 343,814	¥ 312,519

**Table of Contents**

In 1996, the Company, Komatsu Finance America Inc. and Komatsu Finance (Netherlands) B.V. registered the US\$1.0 billion Euro Medium-Term Note Program ( the Program ) on the London Stock Exchange. On April 1, 1999, the registered amount of the Program was increased to US\$1.2 billion. On October 14, 2003, Komatsu Europe Coordination Center N.V. and on September 25, 2008, Komatsu Capital Europe S.V. were added as an issuer under the Program, respectively. At March 31, 2013, the issuers under the Program were the Company, Komatsu Finance America Inc. and Komatsu Capital Europe S.A. Under the Program, each of the issuers may from time to time issue notes denominated in any currency as may be agreed between the relevant issuers and dealers. The issuers under the Program issued ¥29,588 million during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, and ¥29,095 million during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012 of Euro Medium-Term Notes with various interest rates and maturity dates.

The Company has established a program to issue up to ¥100,000 million of variable term bonds.

As is customary in Japan, substantially all bank loans are made under agreements which provide that the banks may require, under certain conditions, the borrower to provide collateral, additional collateral or guarantors for its loans.

Lending banks have a right to offset cash deposited with them against any debt or obligation that becomes due and, in the case of default and certain other specified events, against all other debt payable to the banks.

Under certain loan agreements, the lender may require the borrower to submit proposals for the payment of dividends and other appropriations of earnings for the lender's review and approval before presentation to the shareholders. Komatsu has never received such a request.

Annual maturities of long-term debt subsequent to March 31, 2013, excluding market value adjustments of ¥1,153 million are as follows:

Year ending March 31	Millions of yen
2014	¥ 130,480
2015	119,162
2016	112,345
2017	69,659
2018	41,185
2019 and thereafter	623
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 473,454</b>

**Table of Contents****12. Liability for Pension and Other Retirement Benefits**

The Company's employees, with certain minor exceptions, are covered by a severance payment and a defined benefit cash balance pension plan. The plan provides that approximately 60% of the employee benefits are payable as a pension payment, commencing upon retirement at age 60 (mandatory retirement age) and that the remaining benefits are payable as a lump-sum severance payment based on remuneration, years of service and certain other factors at the time of retirement. The plan also provides for lump-sum severance payments, payable upon earlier termination of employment.

Under the cash balance pension plan, each employee has an account which is credited yearly based on the current rate of pay and market-related interest rate.

Certain subsidiaries have various funded pension plans and/or unfunded severance payment plans for their employees, which are based on years of service and certain other factors. The Company and certain subsidiaries' funding policies are to contribute the amounts to provide not only for benefits attributed to service to date but also for those expected to be earned in the future.

The reconciliation of beginning and ending balances of the benefit obligations and the fair value of the plan assets of the defined benefit plans are as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Change in benefit obligations:		
Benefit obligations, beginning of year	¥ 134,572	¥ 134,360
Service cost	7,247	7,493
Interest cost	3,516	3,475
Actuarial loss	6,233	2,520
Plan participants' contributions	175	87
Acquisition	168	140
Plan amendment	410	
Settlements	(104)	
Benefits paid	(10,838)	(12,646)
Foreign currency exchange rate change	3,132	(857)
Benefit obligations, end of year	¥ 144,511	¥ 134,572
Change in plan assets:		
Fair value of plan assets, beginning of year	¥ 89,061	¥ 92,291
Actual return on plan assets	9,922	1,010
Employers' contributions	7,193	5,447
Plan participants' contributions	175	48
Acquisition		6
Settlements	(104)	
Benefits paid	(7,602)	(9,106)
Foreign currency exchange rate change	2,863	(635)
Fair value of plan assets, end of year	¥ 101,508	¥ 89,061
Funded status, end of year	¥ (43,003)	¥ (45,511)
Prepaid benefit cost	¥ 2,899	¥ 1,799
Other current liabilities	(112)	(100)
Accrued benefit liability	(45,790)	(47,210)
	¥ (43,003)	¥ (45,511)

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Amounts recognized in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss):

Actuarial loss	¥ 34,628	¥ 37,701
Prior service cost	2,183	2,142
	¥ 36,811	¥ 39,843

The accumulated benefit obligations for all defined benefit plans were ¥133,537 million and ¥125,327 million, respectively, at March 31, 2013 and 2012.



**Table of Contents**

Information for pension plans with accumulated benefit obligations in excess of plan assets and pension plans with projected benefit obligations in excess of plan assets is as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Plans with accumulated benefit obligations in excess of plan assets:		
Accumulated benefit obligations	¥ 106,196	¥ 108,512
Plan assets	69,466	68,793
Plans with projected benefit obligations in excess of plan assets:		
Projected benefit obligations	¥ 132,078	¥ 116,386
Plan assets	86,119	69,360

**Components of net periodic pension cost**

Net periodic cost of the companies' defined benefit plans for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, consisted of the following components:

	Millions of yen		
	2013	2012	2011
Service cost	¥ 7,247	¥ 7,493	¥ 6,630
Benefits earned during the year			
Interest cost on projected benefit obligations	3,516	3,475	3,585
Expected return on plan assets	(2,804)	(2,727)	(2,961)
Amortization of actuarial loss	2,188	2,571	2,285
Amortization of prior service cost	369	236	227
Curtailement and settlement gain			(12)
Net periodic cost	¥ 10,516	¥ 11,048	¥ 9,754

Other changes in plan assets and benefit obligations recognized in other comprehensive income (loss) for the years ended March 31, 2013 and 2012 are summarized as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Current year actuarial loss (gain)	¥ (885)	¥ 3,350
Amortization of actuarial loss	(2,188)	(2,571)
Current year prior service cost	410	887
Amortization of prior service cost	(369)	(236)
	¥ (3,032)	¥ 1,430

The estimated actuarial loss and prior service cost for the defined benefit plans that will be amortized from accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) into net periodic cost over the next fiscal year are summarized as follows:

	Millions of yen
Amortization of actuarial loss	¥ 1,860
Amortization of prior service cost	278



**Table of Contents**

Information with respect to the defined benefit plans is as follows:

**Assumptions**

Weighted-average assumptions used to determine benefit obligations at March 31:

	Domestic plans		Foreign plans	
	2013	2012	2013	2012
Discount rate	1.6%	2.0%	4.5%	5.5%
Assumed rate of increase in future compensation levels (Point-based benefit system)	3.8%	3.8%		
Assumed rate of increase in future compensation levels	2.6%	2.3%	4.6%	4.6%

Weighted-average assumptions used to determine net periodic benefit cost for the years ended March 31:

	Domestic plans			Foreign plans		
	2013	2012	2011	2013	2012	2011
Discount rate	2.0%	2.0%	2.0%	5.5%	6.0%	6.0%
Assumed rate of increase in future compensation levels (Point-based benefit system)	3.8%	3.9%	3.8%			
Assumed rate of increase in future compensation levels	2.3%	2.6%	2.6%	4.6%	4.6%	4.4%
Expected long-term rate of return on plan assets	1.9%	1.9%	1.9%	6.1%	6.5%	7.2%

The Company and certain domestic subsidiaries have defined benefit cash balance pension plans. These companies adopt the assumed rate of increase in future compensation levels under the point-based benefit system.

The Company and certain subsidiaries determine the expected long-term rate of return on plan assets based on the consideration of the current expectations for future returns and actual historical returns of each plan asset category.

**Plan assets**

In order to secure long-term comprehensive earnings, the Company and certain subsidiaries' investment policies are designed to ensure adequate plan assets to provide future payments of pension benefits to eligible participants. Taking into account the expected long-term rate of return on plan assets, the Company and certain subsidiaries formulate a basic portfolio comprised of the judged optimum combination of equity and debt securities. Plan assets are principally invested in equity securities, debt securities and life insurance company general accounts in accordance with the guidelines of the basic portfolio in order to produce a total return that will match the expected return on a mid-term to long-term basis. The Company and certain subsidiaries evaluate the gap between expected return and actual return of invested plan assets on an annual basis to determine if such differences necessitate a revision in the formulation of the basic portfolio. The Company and certain subsidiaries revise the basic portfolio when and to the extent considered necessary to achieve the expected long-term rate of return on plan assets.

The Pension and Retirement Benefit Committee is organized in the Company in order to periodically monitor the employment of such plan assets.

Komatsu's target basic portfolio for plan assets consists of three major components: approximately 35% invested in equity securities, approximately 30% invested in debt securities, and approximately 35% invested in other assets, primarily consisting of investments in life insurance company general accounts.

**Table of Contents**

The equity securities are selected primarily from stocks that are listed on the securities exchanges. Prior to investing, Komatsu has investigated the business condition of the investee companies, and appropriately diversified investments by type of industry and other relevant factors. The debt securities are selected primarily from government bonds and municipal bonds, and corporate bonds. Prior investing, Komatsu has investigated the quality of the issue, including rating, interest rate and repayment dates, and has appropriately diversified the investments. Pooled funds are selected using strategies consistent with the equity described above. As for investments in life insurance company general accounts, the contracts with the insurance companies include a guaranteed interest rate and return of capital. With respect to investments in foreign investment assets, Komatsu has investigated the stability of the underlying governments and economies, the market characteristics such as settlement systems and the taxation systems. For each such investment, Komatsu has selected the appropriate investment country and currency. There is no significant concentration of risk within the portfolio of investments.

The three levels of input used to measure fair value are more full described in Note 21.

The fair values of benefit plan assets at March 31, 2013 and 2012 are by asset class are as follows:

At March 31, 2013	Millions of yen			Total
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	
<b>Plan assets</b>				
Cash	¥ 2,787	¥	¥	¥ 2,787
<b>Equity securities</b>				
Japanese equities	8,974	498		9,472
Foreign equities	16,580	5,195		21,775
Pooled funds	6,040	1,106		7,146
<b>Debt securities</b>				
Government bonds and municipal bonds	17,640	6,443		24,083
Corporate bonds		5,085		5,085
<b>Other assets</b>				
Life insurance company general accounts		30,267		30,267
Other	495	398		893
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 52,516</b>	<b>¥ 48,992</b>	<b>¥</b>	<b>¥ 101,508</b>

**Table of Contents**

At March 31, 2012	Millions of yen			Total
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	
<b>Plan assets</b>				
Cash	¥ 3,985			¥ 3,985
<b>Equity securities</b>				
Japanese equities	7,152	459		7,611
Foreign equities	14,257	4,449		18,706
Pooled funds	4,485	619		5,104
<b>Debt securities</b>				
Government bonds and municipal bonds	14,868	4,650		19,518
Corporate bonds		4,382		4,382
<b>Other assets</b>				
Life insurance company general accounts		29,087		29,087
Other	42	170	456	668
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 44,789</b>	<b>¥ 43,816</b>	<b>¥ 456</b>	<b>¥ 89,061</b>

(1) The plan's equity securities include common stock of the Company in the amount of ¥37 million (0.06% of the Company's total plan assets) and ¥45 million (0.08% of the Company's total plan assets) at March 31, 2013 and 2012, respectively.

(2) The plan's pooled funds which are primarily held by the U.S. subsidiaries include listed foreign equity securities primarily consisting U.S. equity.

(3) The plan's government bonds and municipal bonds include approximately 45% Japanese bonds and 55% foreign bonds.

Each level into which assets are categorized is based on inputs used to measure the fair value of the assets, and does not indicate the risks of the assets.

Level 1 assets are comprised principally of equity securities and debt securities, which are valued using quoted prices in active markets. Level 2 assets are comprised of equity securities, debt securities and investments in life insurance company general accounts. Equity securities and debt securities are valued using inputs other than quoted prices included within Level 1 that are observable for the assets or liabilities, either directly or indirectly. Investments in life insurance company general accounts are valued at conversion value.

The fair value of level 3 assets, consisting of the investment trusts held by foreign subsidiaries, was ¥456 million at March 31, 2012. Amounts of actual returns on, purchases and sales of, these assets are not material to Komatsu's consolidated financial position or results of operations.

**Cash flows****(1) Contributions**

The Company and certain subsidiaries expect to contribute ¥5,046 million to their benefit plans in the year ending March 31, 2014.

**(2) Estimated future benefit payments**

The benefits expected to be paid in each of the next five years, and in the aggregate for the five years thereafter which reflect estimated future employee service are as follows:

Year ending March 31	Millions of yen
2014	¥ 7,786
2015	8,318
2016	9,176
2017	9,093
2018	8,404

Through 2019-2023

¥ 42,202

**Other postretirement benefit plans**

Some U.S. subsidiaries provide certain postretirement health care and life insurance benefits for substantially all of their employees. The plans are contributory, with contributions indexed to salary levels. Employee contributions are adjusted to provide for any costs of the plans in excess of those paid for by the subsidiaries. The policy is to fund the cost of these benefits as claims and premiums are paid. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2008 certain U.S. subsidiaries established a Voluntary Employees Beneficiary Association ( VEBA ) trust to hold assets and pay substantially all of these subsidiaries self-funded post employment benefit plan obligations. The VEBA trust arrangement provides for segregation and legal restriction of the plan assets to satisfy plan obligations, and tax deductibility for contributions to the trust, subject to certain tax code limitations.

F-31

**Table of Contents**

The reconciliation of beginning and ending balances of the accumulated postretirement benefit obligations and the fair value of the plan assets of the U.S. subsidiaries' plans are as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
<b>Change in accumulated postretirement benefit obligations:</b>		
Accumulated postretirement benefit obligations, beginning of year	¥ 9,091	¥ 8,309
Service cost	317	218
Interest cost	413	436
Actuarial loss	379	795
Plan participants' contributions	3	2
Medicare Part D	36	57
Benefits paid	(413)	(652)
Foreign currency exchange rate change	1,405	(74)
Accumulated postretirement benefit obligation, end of year	¥ 11,231	¥ 9,091
<b>Change in plan assets:</b>		
Fair value of plan assets, beginning of year	¥ 6,305	¥ 5,351
Actual return on plan assets	469	298
Employers' contributions	1,318	1,881
Plan participants' contributions	3	2
Benefits paid	(1,002)	(1,205)
Foreign currency exchange rate change	1,021	(22)
Fair value of plan assets, end of year	¥ 8,114	¥ 6,305
Funded status, end of year	¥ (3,117)	¥ (2,786)
Prepaid benefit cost	¥ 840	¥ 704
Other current liabilities	(41)	(37)
Accrued benefit liability	(3,916)	(3,453)
	¥ (3,117)	¥ (2,786)
<b>Amounts recognized in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss):</b>		
Actuarial loss	¥ 3,734	¥ 3,657
Prior service cost	476	543
	¥ 4,210	¥ 4,200

Accumulated postretirement benefit obligations exceed plan assets for each of the U.S. subsidiaries' plans.

**Components of net periodic postretirement benefit cost**

Net periodic postretirement benefit cost of the U.S. subsidiaries' plans for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, included the following components:

	Millions of yen		
	2013	2012	2011
Service cost - Benefits earned during the year	¥ 317	¥ 218	¥ 227

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Interest cost on projected benefit obligations	<b>413</b>	436	452
Expected return on plan assets	<b>(360)</b>	(320)	(302)
Amortization of actuarial loss	<b>193</b>	154	196
Amortization of prior service cost	<b>67</b>	64	65
Net periodic cost	<b>¥ 630</b>	¥ 552	¥ 638

F-32



**Table of Contents**

Other changes in plan assets and accumulated postretirement benefit obligations recognized in other comprehensive income (loss) for the years ended March 31, 2013 and 2012 are summarized as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Current year actuarial loss	¥ 270	¥ 761
Amortization of actuarial loss	(193)	(154)
Current year prior service cost		56
Amortization of prior service cost	(67)	(64)
	¥ 10	¥ 599

The estimated actuarial loss and prior service cost for the postretirement benefit plans that will be amortized from accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) into net periodic postretirement benefit cost over the next fiscal year are summarized as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Amortization of actuarial loss	¥ 219	
Amortization of Prior service cost		67

Information with respect to the plans is as follows:

**Assumptions**

Weighted-average assumptions used to determine accumulated postretirement benefit obligations at March 31:

	2013	2012
Discount rate	4.1%	4.7%
Assumed rate of increase in future compensation levels	4.0%	4.0%
Current healthcare cost trend rate	7.8%	7.9%
Ultimate healthcare cost trend rate	4.8%	4.8%
Number of years to ultimate healthcare cost trend rate	3	4

Weighted-average assumptions used to determine net periodic postretirement benefit cost for the years ended March 31:

	2013	2012	2011
Discount rate	4.7%	5.6%	5.4%
Assumed rate of increase in future compensation levels	4.0%	4.0%	4.0%
Expected long-term rate of return on plan assets	5.2%	5.3%	5.6%
Current healthcare cost trend rate	7.9%	7.9%	7.8%
Ultimate healthcare cost trend rate	4.8%	4.8%	4.8%
Number of years to ultimate healthcare cost trend rate	4	5	7

At March 31, 2013 and 2012, the impact of one percentage point change in the assumed health care cost trend rates would not be material to Komatsu's consolidated financial position or results of operations.

**Table of Contents****Plan assets**

The U.S. subsidiaries' investment policies are to provide returns that will maximize principal growth while accepting only moderate risk.

The U.S. subsidiaries' asset portfolio will be invested in a manner that emphasizes safety of capital while achieving total returns consistent with prudent levels of risk. The basic portfolio for the plan assets are comprised approximately of 35% equity securities and 65% debt securities.

The equity securities are selected primarily from stocks that are listed on the securities exchanges. Prior to investing, Komatsu has investigated the business condition of the invested companies, and appropriately diversified investments by type of industry and other relevant factors. The debt securities are selected primarily from government bonds and municipal bonds, and corporate bonds. Prior investing, Komatsu has investigated the quality of the issue, including rating, interest rate and repayment dates, and has appropriately diversified the investments. Pooled funds are selected using strategies consistent with the equity described above. There is no significant concentration of risk within the portfolio of investments.

The three levels of input used to measure fair value are more fully described in Note 21.

The fair values of postretirement benefit plan assets at March 31, 2013 and 2012, by asset class are as follows:

At March 31, 2013	Millions of yen			Total
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	
<b>Plan assets</b>				
Cash	¥ 460	¥	¥	¥ 460
<b>Equity securities</b>				
Foreign equities	966			966
Pooled funds	1,796			1,796
<b>Debt securities</b>				
Government bonds and municipal bonds	333	3,200		3,533
Corporate bonds		1,359		1,359
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 3,555</b>	<b>¥ 4,559</b>	<b>¥</b>	<b>¥ 8,114</b>

  

At March 31, 2012	Millions of yen			Total
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	
<b>Plan assets</b>				
Cash	¥ 281	¥	¥	¥ 281
<b>Equity securities</b>				
Foreign equities	816			816
Pooled funds	1,427			1,427
<b>Debt securities</b>				
Government bonds and municipal bonds		2,775		2,775
Corporate bonds		1,006		1,006
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 2,524</b>	<b>¥ 3,781</b>	<b>¥</b>	<b>¥ 6,305</b>

Each level into which assets are categorized is based on inputs used to measure the fair value of the assets, and does not indicate the risks of the assets.

Level 1 assets are comprised principally of equity securities, which are valued using quoted prices in active markets. Level 2 assets are comprised of debt securities, which are valued using inputs other than quoted prices included within Level 1 that are observable for the assets or liabilities, either directly or indirectly.



**Table of Contents****Cash flows****(1) Contributions**

The U.S. subsidiaries expect to contribute ¥36 million to their post retirement benefit plans in the year ending March 31, 2014.

**(2) Estimated future benefit payments**

The benefits expected to be paid in each of the next five years, and in the aggregate for the five years thereafter which reflect estimated future employee service are as follows:

Year ending March 31	Millions of yen
2014	¥ 650
2015	688
2016	715
2017	739
2018	762
Through 2019-2023	¥ 4,228

Directors of domestic subsidiaries are primarily covered by unfunded retirement allowance plans. At March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, the amounts required if all directors covered by the plans had terminated their service have been fully accrued. Such amounts are not material to Komatsu's consolidated financial position or results of operations for any of the periods presented.

Certain subsidiaries maintain various defined contribution plans covering certain employees. The amount of cost recognized for all periods presented is not material to Komatsu's consolidated financial position or results of operations.

---

**Table of Contents**

**13. Komatsu Ltd. Shareholders' Equity**

**(1) Common Stock and Capital Surplus**

The Commercial Code of Japan (the Code) permitted, upon approval of the Board of Directors, transfer of amounts from capital surplus to common stock. Prior to October 2001, the Company from time to time made free share distributions that were accounted for by a transfer from capital surplus to common stock of the aggregate par value of shares issued. Effective on October 2001, the Code requires no accounting recognition for such free share distribution. Publicly owned corporations in the United States issuing shares in similar transactions would be required to account for them as stock dividends as of the shareholders' record date by reducing retained earnings and increasing appropriate capital accounts by an amount equal to the fair value of the shares issued. If such United States practice had been applied to the cumulative free distributions made by the Company, capital surplus at March 31, 2013, would have been increased by ¥103,189 million with a corresponding decrease in unappropriated retained earnings.

At March 31, 2013 and 2012, affiliated companies owned 1,092,000 and 1,092,000 shares which represent 0.11% and 0.11% of the Company's common stock outstanding, respectively.

The Companies Act, which has been in force since May 1, 2006 (the Act), requires a company to obtain the approval of shareholders for transferring an amount between common stock and capital surplus. Common stock and capital surplus also are available for being transferred to other capital surplus or being used to reduce a deficit mainly upon an approval of shareholders.

**(2) Retained Earnings Appropriated for Legal Reserve**

The Act provides that an amount equal to 10% of retained earnings distributed each fiscal period shall be appropriated as a capital surplus or a legal reserve until the total amount of capital surplus and legal reserve becomes equal to 25% of the amount of common stock.

Legal reserve is available for being transferred to other retained earnings or being used to reduce a deficit mainly upon an approval of shareholders.

**(3) Retained Earnings and Dividends**

The amount of retained earnings available for dividends under the Act is based on the amount recorded in the Company's general books of account maintained in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in Japan. In addition to the Act provision requiring an appropriation for capital surplus or legal reserve as discussed above, the Act imposes certain limitations on the amount of retained earnings available for dividends. Accordingly, total shareholders' equity of ¥340,851 million, included in the Company's general books of account as of March 31, 2013 is available for dividends under the Act.

The Board of Directors recommended to and approved by the shareholders, at the general meeting held on June 19, 2013, payment of a cash dividend totaling ¥22,880 million to shareholders of record on March 31, 2013. The dividend approved in the shareholder's meeting on June 19, 2013 has not been reflected in the consolidated financial statements as of March 31, 2013. Dividends are reported in the consolidated statements of equity when approved and paid.

The Act provides that a company can make dividends of earnings anytime with resolution of the shareholders. It also provides that a company can declare an interim dividend once a fiscal year according to its charter of corporation.

## **Table of Contents**

### **(4) Repurchase and Retirement of the Company's Outstanding Shares**

The Company repurchased its own shares based on the resolutions made by the Board of Directors in its meeting held on October 27, 2011 and in accordance with Article 156 of the Act as modified by Article 165, Paragraph 3 of the Act. The Company retired repurchased shares pursuant to Article 178 of the Act. By March 31, 2012, the company had purchased and retired 15,613,800 shares. The purchasing and retiring amounts are ¥29,997 million and ¥22,218 million respectively. The difference of the amounts is due to the difference between the purchasing price and moving average book value of the shares.

### **(5) Share-Based Compensation**

The Company has two types of stock option plans as share-based compensation for directors and certain employees and certain directors of subsidiaries.

#### **The stock option plans resolved by the Board of Directors' meetings held in and before June 2010.**

The right to purchase the Company's shares is granted at a predetermined price to directors and certain employees and certain directors of subsidiaries. The purchase price is the amount calculated by taking the average of the closing prices applicable to ordinary transactions of shares of the Company on the Tokyo Stock Exchange on all days for a month immediately preceding the month in which the date of grant of the right falls and multiplying by 1.05, provided that the exercise price shall not be less than the closing price of the shares of the Company on the Tokyo Stock Exchange on the date of the grant.

#### **The stock option plans resolved by the Board of Directors' meetings held in and after July 2010.**

The right to purchase the Company's shares is granted at an exercise price of ¥1 per share to directors and certain employees and certain directors of subsidiaries.

Based on the resolutions of the shareholders' meeting on June 23, 2010 and the Board of Directors on July 13, 2010, the Company issued 210 rights of its share acquisition rights to directors and 558 rights of its share acquisition rights to certain employees and certain directors of subsidiaries during the year ended March 31, 2011. The options vest 100% on each of the grant dates and are exercisable from August 2, 2013.

Based on the resolutions of the shareholders' meeting on June 23, 2010 and the Board of Directors on July 13, 2011, the Company issued 872 rights of its share acquisition rights to directors. Based on the resolutions of the shareholders' meeting on June 22, 2011 and the Board of Directors on July 13, 2011, the Company also issued 2,529 rights of its share acquisition rights to certain employees and certain directors of subsidiaries during the year ended March 31, 2012. The options vest 100% on each of the grant dates and are exercisable from August 1, 2014.

Based on the resolutions of the shareholders' meeting on June 23, 2010 and the Board of Directors on July 12, 2012, the Company issued 843 rights of its share acquisition rights to directors. Based on the resolutions of the shareholders' meeting on June 20, 2012 and the Board of Directors on July 12, 2012, the Company also issued 2,555 rights of its share acquisition rights to certain employees and certain directors of subsidiaries during the year ended March 31, 2013. The options vest 100% on each of the grant dates and are exercisable from August 1, 2015.

The number of shares subject to one share acquisition right is 100 shares.

**Table of Contents**

Komatsu recognizes compensation expense using the fair value method. Compensation expenses during the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 were ¥500 million, ¥771 million and ¥137 million, respectively, and were recorded in selling, general and administrative expenses.

The following table summarizes information about stock option activity for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011:

	2013		2012		2011	
	Number of shares	Weighted average exercise price Yen	Number of shares	Weighted average exercise price Yen	Number of shares	Weighted average exercise price Yen
Outstanding at beginning of year	3,182,900	¥ 1,947	3,235,800	¥ 2,047	3,333,000	¥ 2,051
Granted	339,800	1	340,100	1	76,800	1
Exercised	(535,000)	1,189	(393,000)	1,082	(174,000)	1,238
Outstanding at end of year	2,987,700	1,861	3,182,900	1,947	3,235,800	2,047
Exercisable at end of year	2,231,000	2,492	2,766,000	2,240	3,159,000	2,096

The intrinsic values of options exercised were ¥632 million, ¥519 million and ¥199 million for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011.

The information for options outstanding and options exercisable at March 31, 2013 are as follows.

Exercise Prices	Outstanding			Options Exercisable		
	Number of shares	Weighted average exercise price Yen	Intrinsic value Millions of yen	Number of shares	Weighted average exercise price Yen	Intrinsic value Millions of yen
¥1 900	756,700	¥ 1	¥ 1,701			
¥901 1,350	150,000	1,126	169	150,000	1,126	169
¥1,351 2,325	1,072,000	2,068	240	1,072,000	2,068	240
¥2,326 3,700	1,009,000	3,146	0	1,009,000	3,146	0
¥1 3,700	2,987,700	1,861	2,110	2,231,000	2,492	409

The fair value of each share option award is estimated on the date of grant using a discrete-time model (a binomial model) based on the assumptions noted in the following table. Because a discrete-time model incorporates ranges of assumptions for inputs, those ranges are disclosed. Expected volatilities are based on implied volatilities from historical volatility of the Company's shares.

**Table of Contents**

The Company uses historical data to estimate share option exercise and employee departure behavior used in the discrete-time model. The expected term of share options granted represents the period of time that share options granted are expected to be outstanding. The risk-free rate for periods within the contractual term of the share option is based on the Japanese government bond yield curve in effect at the time of grant.

	2013		2012		2011	
Grant-date fair value	¥	<b>1,470</b>	¥	2,268	¥	1,785
Expected term	<b>5 years</b>		5 years		5 years	
Risk-free rate	<b>0.10%</b>	<b>0.81%</b>	0.12%	1.12%	0.13%	1.11%
Expected volatility	<b>46.00%</b>		48.00%		54.00%	
Expected dividend yield	<b>1.91%</b>		1.83%		0.96%	

\* Interest rate corresponding to discount periods is applied to risk-free rate, that is as follows:

	1 year	2 years	3 years	4 years	5 years	6 years	7 years	8 years	9 years	10 years
2013	0.10%	0.10%	0.10%	0.13%	0.20%	0.30%	0.41%	0.55%	0.68%	0.81%
2012	0.12%	0.16%	0.21%	0.29%	0.38%	0.49%	0.63%	0.78%	0.96%	1.12%
2011	0.13%	0.14%	0.18%	0.25%	0.36%	0.47%	0.59%	0.76%	0.94%	1.11%



**Table of Contents****14. Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)**

Each component of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) at March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, is as follows:

	2013	Millions of yen 2012	2011
<b>Foreign currency translation adjustments:</b>			
Balance, beginning of year	¥ (131,009)	¥ (122,286)	¥ (85,056)
Current period other comprehensive income (loss)	92,176	(8,723)	(37,230)
Balance, end of year	¥ (38,833)	¥ (131,009)	¥ (122,286)
<b>Net unrealized holding gains on securities available for sale:</b>			
Balance, beginning of year	¥ 16,829	¥ 16,104	¥ 14,126
Current period other comprehensive income (loss)	4,690	725	1,978
Balance, end of year	¥ 21,519	¥ 16,829	¥ 16,104
<b>Pension liability adjustments:</b>			
Balance, beginning of year	¥ (26,338)	¥ (24,406)	¥ (24,315)
Current period other comprehensive income (loss)	1,503	(1,932)	(91)
Balance, end of year	¥ (24,835)	¥ (26,338)	¥ (24,406)
<b>Net unrealized holding gains (losses) on derivative instruments:</b>			
Balance, beginning of year	¥ (1,871)	¥ (471)	¥ (389)
Current period other comprehensive income (loss)	580	(1,400)	(82)
Balance, end of year	¥ (1,291)	¥ (1,871)	¥ (471)
<b>Total accumulated other comprehensive loss;</b>			
Balance, beginning of year	¥ (142,389)	¥ (131,059)	¥ (95,634)
Current period other comprehensive income (loss)	98,949	(11,330)	(35,425)
Balance, end of year	¥ (43,440)	¥ (142,389)	¥ (131,059)

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2012, Adjustment for the year of Foreign currency translation adjustments included ¥36 million of gains and of Pension Liability adjustment ¥2 million of losses which transferred to non-controlling interests and is not recognized as other comprehensive income (loss).

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011, Adjustment for the year of Foreign currency translation adjustments included ¥7 million of gains which transferred to non-controlling interests and is not recognized as other comprehensive income (loss).

**Table of Contents**

The component of other comprehensive income (loss) and adjustments including amounts attributable to noncontrolling interests for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 are as follows:

	Pretax amount	Millions of yen Tax (expense) or benefit	Net of tax amount
<b>2013:</b>			
Foreign currency translation adjustments			
Unrealized holding gains arising during the year	¥ 97,769	¥ 368	¥ 98,137
Less: reclassification adjustment for losses included in net income	1,646	(588)	1,058
<b>Net unrealized gains</b>	<b>99,415</b>	<b>(220)</b>	<b>99,195</b>
Net unrealized holding gains on securities available for sale:			
Unrealized holding gains arising during the year	7,833	(2,673)	5,160
Less: reclassification adjustment for gains included in net income	(731)	261	(470)
<b>Net unrealized gains</b>	<b>7,102</b>	<b>(2,412)</b>	<b>4,690</b>
Pension liability adjustments			
Unrealized holding losses arising during the year	118	(697)	(579)
Less: reclassification adjustment for losses included in net income	2,817	(798)	2,019
<b>Net unrealized gains</b>	<b>2,935</b>	<b>(1,495)</b>	<b>1,440</b>
Net unrealized holding gains on derivative instruments:			
Changes in fair value of derivatives	(7,830)	2,974	(4,856)
Net losses reclassified into earnings	8,741	(3,330)	5,411
<b>Net unrealized gains</b>	<b>911</b>	<b>(356)</b>	<b>555</b>
<b>Other comprehensive income</b>	<b>¥ 110,363</b>	<b>¥ (4,483)</b>	<b>¥ 105,880</b>
<b>2012:</b>			
Foreign currency translation adjustments			
Unrealized holding losses arising during the year	¥ (9,543)	¥ 591	¥ (8,952)
Less: reclassification adjustment for losses included in net income			
<b>Net unrealized losses</b>	<b>(9,543)</b>	<b>591</b>	<b>(8,952)</b>
Net unrealized holding gains on securities available for sale:			
Unrealized holding gains arising during the year	3,331	(1,021)	2,310
Less: reclassification adjustment for gains included in net income	(2,676)	1,091	(1,585)
<b>Net unrealized gains</b>	<b>655</b>	<b>70</b>	<b>725</b>
Pension liability adjustments			
Unrealized holding losses arising during the year	(5,198)	1,420	(3,778)
Less: reclassification adjustment for losses included in net income	3,025	(1,190)	1,835
<b>Net unrealized losses</b>	<b>(2,173)</b>	<b>230</b>	<b>(1,943)</b>
Net unrealized holding losses on derivative instruments:			
Changes in fair value of derivatives	665	(410)	255
Net gains reclassified into earnings	(3,023)	1,262	(1,761)
<b>Net unrealized losses</b>	<b>(2,358)</b>	<b>852</b>	<b>(1,506)</b>
<b>Other comprehensive loss</b>	<b>¥ (13,419)</b>	<b>¥ 1,743</b>	<b>¥ (11,676)</b>



**Table of Contents**

	Pretax amount	Millions of yen Tax (expense) or benefit	Net of tax amount
<b>2011:</b>			
Foreign currency translation adjustments			
Unrealized holding losses arising during the year	¥ (40,022)	¥ 493	¥ (39,529)
Less: reclassification adjustment for losses included in net income			
Net unrealized losses	(40,022)	493	(39,529)
Net unrealized holding gains on securities available for sale:			
Unrealized holding gains arising during the year	4,172	(1,678)	2,494
Less: reclassification adjustment for gains included in net income	(871)	355	(516)
Net unrealized gains	3,301	(1,323)	1,978
Pension liability adjustments			
Unrealized holding losses arising during the year	(4,308)	2,706	(1,602)
Less: reclassification adjustment for losses included in net income	2,761	(1,250)	1,511
Net unrealized losses	(1,547)	1,456	(91)
Net unrealized holding losses on derivative instruments:			
Changes in fair value of derivatives	7,395	(2,995)	4,400
Net gains reclassified into earnings	(7,475)	3,049	(4,426)
Net unrealized losses	(80)	54	(26)
Other comprehensive loss	¥ (38,348)	¥ 680	¥ (37,668)

**Table of Contents****15. Income Taxes**

The sources of income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies and the sources of income taxes for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, were as follows:

	2013	Millions of yen 2012	2011
Income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies:			
Domestic	¥ 54,445	¥ 79,712	¥ 68,682
Foreign	150,158	169,897	151,127
	¥ 204,603	¥ 249,609	¥ 219,809
Income taxes:			
Current			
Domestic	¥ 23,885	¥ 16,618	¥ 15,391
Foreign	50,743	49,802	42,532
	¥ 74,628	¥ 66,420	¥ 57,923
Deferred			
Domestic	¥ (2,627)	¥ 8,911	¥ 4,885
Foreign	(2,912)	(861)	1,898
	¥ (5,539)	¥ 8,050	¥ 6,783
Total	¥ 69,089	¥ 74,470	¥ 64,706

Total income taxes recognized for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 were applicable to the following:

	2013	Millions of yen 2012	2011
Income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies	¥ 69,089	¥ 74,470	¥ 64,706
Other comprehensive income(loss):			
Foreign currency translation adjustments	220	(591)	(493)
Net unrealized holding gains(losses) on securities available for sale	2,412	(70)	1,323
Pension liability adjustments	1,495	(230)	(1,456)
Net unrealized holding gains(losses) on derivative instruments	356	(852)	(54)
Total income taxes	¥ 73,572	¥ 72,727	¥ 64,026

**Table of Contents**

Temporary differences and tax loss carryforwards which gave rise to deferred tax assets and liabilities at March 31, 2013 and 2012, are as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
<b>Deferred tax assets:</b>		
Allowances provided, not yet recognized for tax	¥ 4,537	¥ 5,151
Accrued expenses	38,093	33,801
Investment securities	5,828	5,691
Pension and retirement benefits	11,120	13,619
Property, plant and equipment	10,735	11,066
Inventories	10,783	9,460
Net operating loss carryforwards	19,143	14,265
Research and development expenses	1,376	1,255
Other	12,141	8,170
<b>Total gross deferred tax assets</b>	<b>113,756</b>	102,478
Less valuation allowance	(25,015)	(20,730)
<b>Total deferred tax assets</b>	<b>¥ 88,741</b>	¥ 81,748
<b>Deferred tax liabilities:</b>		
Unrealized holding gains on securities available for sale	¥ 11,750	¥ 8,776
Property, plant and equipment	10,705	11,267
Intangible assets	10,583	10,584
Undistributed earnings of foreign subsidiaries and affiliated companies accounted for by the equity method	5,393	4,724
<b>Total deferred tax liabilities</b>	<b>¥ 38,431</b>	¥ 35,351
<b>Total deferred tax assets</b>	<b>¥ 50,310</b>	¥ 46,397

Net deferred tax assets and liabilities as of March 31, 2013 and 2012 are reflected on the consolidated balance sheets under the following captions:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Deferred income taxes and other current assets	¥ 55,591	¥ 44,825
Deferred income taxes and other assets	13,442	18,835
Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	(507)	(687)
Deferred income taxes and other liabilities	(18,216)	(16,576)
	<b>¥ 50,310</b>	¥ 46,397

The valuation allowances were ¥36,690 million and ¥49,081 million as of March 31, 2011 and 2010, respectively. The net changes in the total valuation allowance for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 were an increase of ¥4,285 million, a decrease of ¥15,960 million and a decrease of ¥12,391 million, respectively. The decreases for the years ended March 31, 2012 and 2011 were due primarily to a reduction in the valuation allowance at certain consolidated subsidiaries related to changes in assessment about the likelihood of recovery of certain deferred tax assets. The valuation allowance had been recorded as the subsidiaries had not yet demonstrated consistent and/or sustainable profitability to support the recognition of net deferred tax assets.

## Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

The decrease of the valuation allowance for the year ended March 31, 2012 mainly consists of ¥12,686 million by a change in assessment about the likelihood of recovery of a deferred tax asset related to the decision of the merger between Komatsu Rental Ltd. and the Company for the year ended March 31, 2012. The decrease of the valuation allowance for the year ended March 31, 2011 mainly consists of ¥13,579 million by a change in the likelihood of recovery of a deferred tax asset related to the decision of the merger between Komatsu Utility Co., Ltd. and the Company for the year ended March 31, 2011.

F-44

**Table of Contents**

In assessing the realizability of deferred tax assets, management considers whether it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will be realized. The ultimate realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon the generation of future taxable income during the periods in which those temporary differences become deductible and net operating losses available to be utilized. Management considers the scheduled reversal of deferred tax liabilities, projected future taxable income and tax planning strategies in making this assessment. Based upon the level of historical taxable income and projections for future taxable income over the periods in which the deferred tax assets, net of the existing valuation allowances at March 31, 2013 and 2012, are deductible, management believes it is more likely than not that the companies will realize the benefits of these deductible differences and net operating loss carryforwards. The amount of the deferred tax asset considered realizable, however, could be reduced in the near term if estimates of future taxable income during the carryforward period are reduced.

The Company and its domestic subsidiaries are subject to a National Corporate tax rate of 28%, an inhabitant tax of approximately 5% and a deductible Enterprise tax of approximately 8%, which in the aggregate resulted in a Japanese statutory tax rate of approximately 38.1% for the year ended March 31, 2013 and are subject to a National Corporate tax rate of 30%, an inhabitant tax of approximately 6% and a deductible Enterprise tax of approximately 8%, which in the aggregate resulted in a Japanese statutory tax rate of approximately 40.8% for the years ended March 31, 2012 and 2011. The inhabitant tax rate and Enterprise tax rate vary by local jurisdiction.

The differences between the Japanese statutory tax rates and the effective tax rates for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, are summarized as follows:

	2013	2012	2011
Japanese statutory tax rate	<b>38.1%</b>	40.8%	40.8%
Increase (decrease) in tax rates resulting from:			
Change in valuation allowance	<b>1.3</b>	(5.4)	(4.9)
Expenses not deductible for tax purposes	<b>0.5</b>	0.1	1.5
Income of foreign subsidiaries taxed at lower than Japanese normal rate	<b>(6.2)</b>	(6.7)	(8.3)
Tax credit for research and development expenses	<b>(1.3)</b>	(0.0)	(1.3)
Other, net	<b>1.4</b>	1.0	1.6
Effective tax rate	<b>33.8%</b>	29.8%	29.4%

On November 30, 2011, the National Diet of Japan approved the laws for amendments to previous income tax laws. Upon the change in the laws, the statutory tax rate in Japan will be changed to approximately 38.1% for fiscal years beginning on or after April 1, 2012, and to approximately 35.7% for fiscal years beginning on or after April 1, 2015. Thus, the Company and its domestic subsidiaries measured deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the tax rates to be applied in the fiscal years in which temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect of tax rate changes in Japan did not have a material impact on Komatsu's consolidated financial statements.



**Table of Contents**

Foreign subsidiaries are subject to income taxes of the countries in which they operate. At March 31, 2013 and 2012, undistributed earnings of foreign subsidiaries amount to ¥629,808 million and ¥538,322 million, respectively. Komatsu has a policy to distribute a certain portion of undistributed earnings of foreign subsidiaries. As of March 31, 2013 and 2012, Komatsu recognized deferred tax liabilities of ¥1,773 million and ¥1,211 million, respectively, associated with those earnings. As of March 31, 2013 and 2012, Komatsu has not recognized deferred tax liabilities of ¥19,442 million and ¥20,138 million, respectively, for such portion of undistributed earnings of foreign subsidiaries that the Company intends to reinvest indefinitely.

At March 31, 2013, certain subsidiaries had net operating loss carryforwards aggregating approximately ¥59,780 million, which may be used as a deduction in determining taxable income in future periods. The period available to offset future taxable income varies in each tax jurisdiction as follows:

Year ending March 31, 2013	Millions of yen
Within 5 years	¥ 25,339
6 to 20 years	17,575
Indefinite periods	16,866
Total	¥ 59,780

Although Komatsu believes its estimates of unrecognized tax benefits are reasonable, uncertainties regarding the final determination of income tax audit settlements and any related litigation could affect the total amount of unrecognized tax benefits in the future periods. For the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, Komatsu did not have material unrecognized tax benefits and thus, no significant interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits were recognized. Based on the information available as of March 31, 2013, Komatsu does not expect significant changes to the unrecognized tax benefits within the next twelve months.

Komatsu files income tax returns in Japan and various foreign tax jurisdictions. Komatsu is no longer subject to income tax examinations by the tax authority before and in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2009 in Japan and, is no longer subject to income tax examinations by the tax authority before and in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2006 in the United States. In other foreign tax jurisdictions, the other subsidiaries are no longer subject to income tax examinations by tax authorities before and in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2006 with few exceptions.

**Table of Contents****16. Rent Expenses**

Komatsu leases office space and equipment and employee housing under cancelable and non-cancelable lease agreements. Rent expenses under cancelable and non-cancelable operating leases amounted to ¥15,437 million, ¥15,491 million and ¥14,480 million, respectively, for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011. At March 31, 2013, the future minimum lease payments under non-cancelable operating leases and capital leases are as follows:

Year ending March 31	Capital leases	Millions of yen Operating lease commitments	Total
2014	¥ 4,675	¥ 4,300	¥ 8,975
2015	3,297	3,047	6,344
2016	1,515	2,154	3,669
2017	367	1,284	1,651
2018	187	639	826
Thereafter	389	1,558	1,947
<b>Total minimum lease payments</b>	<b>¥ 10,430</b>	<b>¥ 12,982</b>	<b>¥ 23,412</b>
Less: amounts representing interest		(454)	
<b>Present value of net minimum capital lease payments</b>	<b>¥ 9,976</b>		

F-47

**Table of Contents****17. Net Income Attributable to Komatsu Ltd. per Share**

A reconciliation of the numerators and denominators of the basic and diluted net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. per share computations is as follows:

	2013	Millions of yen 2012	2011
Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd.	¥ <b>126,321</b>	¥ 167,041	¥ 150,752
	2013	Number of shares 2012	2011
Weighted average common shares outstanding, less treasury stock	<b>952,376,139</b>	962,919,074	967,803,446
Dilutive effect of:			
Stock options	<b>902,065</b>	857,871	671,477
Weighted average diluted common shares outstanding	<b>953,278,204</b>	963,776,945	968,474,923
	2013	Yen 2012	2011
Net income attributable to Komatsu Ltd. per share:			
Basic	¥ <b>132.64</b>	¥ 173.47	¥ 155.77
Diluted	<b>132.51</b>	173.32	155.66

**Table of Contents****18. Commitments and Contingent Liabilities**

At March 31, 2013, Komatsu was contingently liable for discounted and transferred receivables on a recourse basis with the financial institutions of ¥406 million.

Komatsu provides guarantees to third parties of loans of the employees, affiliated companies, customers and other companies. The guarantees relating to the employees are mainly made for their housing loans. The guarantees of loans relating to the affiliated companies, customers and other companies are made to enhance the credit of those companies.

For each guarantee provided, Komatsu would have to perform under a guarantee, if the borrower defaults on a payment within the contract terms. The contract terms are from 10 years to 30 years in the case of employees with housing loans, and from 1 year to 11 years in the case of loans relating to the affiliated companies, customers and other companies. The maximum amount of undiscounted payments Komatsu would have had to make in the event of default is ¥94,776 million at March 31, 2013. The fair value of the liabilities recognized for Komatsu's obligations as guarantors under those guarantees at March 31, 2013 were insignificant. Certain of those guarantees were secured by collateral and insurance issued to the Company.

Management of Komatsu believes that losses from those contingent liabilities, if any, would not have a material effect on the consolidated financial statements.

Commitments for capital investment outstanding at March 31, 2013, aggregated approximately ¥13,100 million.

Komatsu is involved in certain legal actions and claims arising in the ordinary course of its business. It is the opinion of management and legal counsel that such litigation and claims will be resolved without material effect on Komatsu's financial statements.

Komatsu has business activities with customers, dealers and associates around the world. The trade receivables from such parties and the guarantees for them are well diversified to minimize concentrations of credit risks. Management does not anticipate incurring losses on its trade receivables in excess of established allowances.

Komatsu also issues contractual product warranties under which it generally guarantee the performance of products delivered and services rendered for a certain period or term. Change in accrued product warranty cost for the years ended March 31, 2013 and 2012 is summarized as follows:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Balance at beginning of year	¥ 30,534	¥ 28,531
Addition	25,624	28,234
Utilization	(27,412)	(26,211)
Other	2,454	(20)
Balance at end of year	¥ 31,200	¥ 30,534

---

## **Table of Contents**

### **19. Derivative Financial Instruments**

#### **Risk Management Policy**

Komatsu is exposed to market risk primarily from changes in foreign currency exchange and interest rates with respect to debt obligations, international operations and foreign currency denominated credits and debts. In order to manage these risks that arise in the normal course of business, Komatsu enters into various derivative transactions for hedging pursuant to its policies and procedures (Notes 20 and 21). Komatsu does not enter into derivative financial transactions for trading or speculative purposes.

Komatsu has entered into interest rate swap and cap agreements, partly concurrent with currency swap agreements for the purpose of managing the risk resulting from changes in cash flow or fair value that arise in their interest rate and foreign currency exposure with respect to certain short-term and long-term debts.

Komatsu operates internationally which expose Komatsu to the foreign exchange risk against existing assets and liabilities and transactions denominated in foreign currencies (principally the U.S. dollar and the Euro). In order to reduce these risks, Komatsu executes forward exchange contracts and option contracts based on its projected cash flow in foreign currencies.

Komatsu is exposed to credit-related losses in the event of nonperformance by counterparties to derivative financial instruments, but Komatsu does not expect any counterparties to fail to meet their obligations because of the high credit rating of the counterparties. Komatsu has not held any derivative instruments which consisted credit-risk-related contingent features.

#### **Cash Flow Hedges**

Komatsu uses derivative financial instruments designated as cash flow hedges to manage Komatsu's foreign exchange risks associated with forecasted transactions and Komatsu's interest risks associated with debt obligations. For transactions denominated in foreign currencies, Komatsu typically hedges forecasted and firm commitment exposures to the variability in cash flow basically up to one year. For the variable rate debt obligations, Komatsu enters into interest rate swap contracts to manage the changes in cash flows. Komatsu records the changes in fair value of derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedges in other comprehensive income (loss). These amounts are reclassified into earnings through other income (expenses), net when the hedged items impact earnings. Approximately ¥1,000 million of existing income included in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) at March 31, 2013 will be reclassified into earnings within twelve months from that date. No cash flow hedges were discontinued during the year ended March 31, 2013 as a result of anticipated transactions that are no longer probable of occurring.

#### **Undesignated Derivative Instruments**

Komatsu has entered into interest rate swap and cross-currency swap contracts not designated as hedging instruments under ASC 815, Derivatives and Hedging as a means of managing Komatsu's interest rate exposures for short-term and long-term debts. Forward contracts and option contracts not designated as hedging instruments under ASC815 are also used to hedge certain foreign currency exposures. The changes in fair value of such instruments are recognized currently in earnings.

**Table of Contents****Notional Principal Amounts of Derivative Financial Instruments**

Notional principal amounts of derivative financial instruments outstanding at March 31, 2013 and 2012 are as follows.

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Forwards and options:		
Sale of foreign currencies	¥ 130,060	¥ 129,282
Purchase of foreign currencies	39,904	78,859
Option contracts (purchased)		247
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements	103,182	83,014

Fair value of derivative instruments at March 31, 2013 and 2012 on the consolidated balance sheets are as follows:

Derivative instruments designated as hedging instruments	Derivative Assets Location on the consolidated Balance Sheets	Millions of yen 2013		Derivative Liabilities Location on the consolidated Balance Sheets	Estimated fair value
		Estimated fair value	Estimated fair value		
Forwards contracts	Deferred income taxes and other current assets	¥ 43		Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	¥ 2,479
	Deferred income taxes and other assets			Deferred income taxes and other liabilities	3,905
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements	Deferred income taxes and other current assets	42		Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	1,063
Total		¥ 85			¥ 7,447

Undesignated derivative instruments	Derivative Assets Location on the consolidated Balance Sheets	Millions of yen 2013		Derivative Liabilities Location on the consolidated Balance Sheets	Estimated fair value
		Estimated fair value	Estimated fair value		
Forwards contracts	Deferred income taxes and other current assets	¥ 463		Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	¥ 3,628
	Deferred income taxes and other assets	1		Deferred income taxes and other liabilities	11
Option contracts	Deferred income taxes and other current assets			Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements	Deferred income taxes and other current assets	2		Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	791
	Deferred income taxes and other assets	¥ 288		Deferred income taxes and other liabilities	¥ 272
Total		¥ 754			¥ 4,702
Total Derivative Instruments		¥ 839			¥ 12,149

**Table of Contents**

Millions of yen 2012				
<b>Derivative instruments designated as hedging instruments</b>	Derivative Assets Location on the consolidated Balance Sheets	Estimated fair value	Derivative Liabilities Location on the consolidated Balance Sheets	Estimated fair value
Forwards contracts	Deferred income taxes and other current assets	¥ 1,681	Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	¥ 5,578
	Deferred income taxes and other assets		Deferred income taxes and other liabilities	105
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements	Deferred income taxes and other current assets	21	Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	750
<b>Total</b>		<b>¥ 1,702</b>		<b>¥ 6,433</b>
<b>Undesignated derivative instruments</b>	Derivative Assets Location on the consolidated Balance Sheets	Estimated fair value	Derivative Liabilities Location on the consolidated Balance Sheets	Estimated fair value
Forwards contracts	Deferred income taxes and other current assets	¥ 569	Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	¥ 2,805
	Deferred income taxes and other assets		Deferred income taxes and other liabilities	55
Option contracts	Deferred income taxes and other current assets	5	Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements	Deferred income taxes and other current assets	1,102	Deferred income taxes and other current liabilities	418
	Deferred income taxes and other assets	¥ 467	Deferred income taxes and other liabilities	¥ 9
<b>Total</b>		<b>¥ 2,143</b>		<b>¥ 3,287</b>
<b>Total Derivative Instruments</b>		<b>¥ 3,845</b>		<b>¥ 9,720</b>

**Table of Contents**

The effects of derivative instruments on the consolidated statements of income for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 are as follows:

**Derivative instruments designated as cash flow hedging relationships**

	Millions of yen 2013				
	Amount of gains (losses) recognized in OCI on derivatives	Effective portion		Ineffective portion and amount excluded from effectiveness testing	
		Location of gains (losses) reclassified from accumulated OCI into income	Amount of gains (losses) reclassified from accumulated OCI into income	Location of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives	Amount of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives
Forwards contracts	¥ (7,737)	Other expenses, net: Other, net	¥ (8,741)		¥
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements	(93)	Other expenses, net: Other, net			
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ (7,830)</b>		<b>¥ (8,741)</b>		<b>¥</b>

	Millions of yen 2012				
	Amount of gains (losses) recognized in OCI on derivatives	Effective portion		Ineffective portion and amount excluded from effectiveness testing	
		Location of gains (losses) reclassified from accumulated OCI into income	Amount of gains (losses) reclassified from accumulated OCI into income	Location of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives	Amount of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives
Forwards contracts	¥ 665	Other expenses, net: Other, net	¥ 2,645		¥
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements		Other expenses, net: Other, net	378		
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 665</b>		<b>¥ 3,023</b>		<b>¥</b>

	Millions of yen 2011				
	Amount of gains (losses) recognized in OCI on derivatives	Effective portion		Ineffective portion and amount excluded from effectiveness testing	
		Location of gains (losses) reclassified from accumulated OCI into income	Amount of gains (losses) reclassified from accumulated OCI into income	Location of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives	Amount of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives



Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Forwards contracts	¥ 7,195	Other expenses, net: Other, net	¥ 7,475	¥
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements	200	Other expenses, net: Other, net		
Total	¥ 7,395		¥ 7,475	¥

\* OCI stands for other comprehensive income (loss).

F-53

**Table of Contents****Derivative instruments not designated as hedging instruments relationships**

	Millions of yen 2013	Amount of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives
	Location of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives	
Forwards contracts	Other expenses, net: Other, net	¥ (5,737)
Option contracts	Other expenses, net: Other, net	(4)
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements	Cost of sales Other expenses, net: Other, net	(216) 579
Total		¥ (5,378)

	Millions of yen 2012	Amount of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives
	Location of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives	
Forwards contracts	Other expenses, net: Other, net	¥ 329
Option contracts	Other expenses, net: Other, net	(0)
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements	Cost of sales Other expenses, net: Other, net	(200) (5,995)
Total		¥ (5,866)

	Millions of yen 2011	Amount of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives
	Location of gains (losses) recognized in income on derivatives	
Forwards contracts	Other expenses, net: Other, net	¥ (1,411)
Option contracts	Other expenses, net: Other, net	(9)
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements	Cost of sales Other expenses, net: Other, net	(455) 2,816
Total		¥ 941

**Table of Contents**

**20. Fair Values of Financial Instruments**

**(1) Cash and cash equivalents, Time deposits, Trade notes and accounts receivable, Other current assets, Short-term debt, Trade notes, bills and accounts payables, and Other current liabilities**

The carrying amount approximates fair value because of the short maturity of these instruments.

**(2) Investment securities, marketable equity securities**

The fair values of investment securities available for sale for which it is practicable to estimate fair value are based on quoted market prices and are recognized on the accompanying consolidated balance sheets.

**(3) Long-term trade receivables (Note 4)**

The fair values of long-term trade receivables are based on the present value of future cash flows through maturity, discounted using estimated current interest rates. The fair values computed on such a basis approximate the carrying amounts.

**(4) Long-term debt, including current portion (Note 21)**

The fair values of each of the long-term debt are based on the quoted price in the most active market or the present value of future cash flows associated with each instrument discounted using the current borrowing rate for similar debt of comparable maturity and is classified in Level 2 in the fair value hierarchy.

**(5) Derivatives (Notes 19 and 21)**

The fair values of derivative financial instruments, consisting principally of foreign exchange contracts and interest swap agreements, are estimated by obtaining quotes from brokers and are recognized on the accompanying consolidated balance sheets.

**Table of Contents**

The carrying amounts and the estimated fair values of the financial instruments, including financial instruments not qualifying as hedge, as of March 31, 2013 and 2012, are summarized as follows:

	Millions of yen			
	2013		2012	
	Carrying amount	Estimated fair value	Carrying amount	Estimated fair value
Cash and cash equivalents	¥ 93,620	¥ 93,620	¥ 83,079	¥ 83,079
Time deposits	217	217	907	907
Trade notes and accounts receivable	606,904	606,904	559,749	559,749
Long-term trade receivables	235,825	235,825	184,294	184,294
Investment securities, marketable equity securities	50,954	50,954	45,933	45,933
Short-term debt	205,156	205,156	215,824	215,824
Trade notes, bills and accounts payable	226,275	226,275	273,460	273,460
Long-term debt, including current portion	474,607	469,444	431,976	429,357
Derivatives:				
Forward and options				
Assets	507	507	2,255	2,255
Liabilities	10,023	10,023	8,543	8,543
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swap and interest rate cap agreements				
Assets	332	332	1,590	1,590
Liabilities	2,126	2,126	1,177	1,177

**Limitations**

Fair value estimates are made at a specific point in time, based on relevant market information and information about the financial instrument. These estimates are subjective in nature and involve uncertainties and matters of significant judgment and therefore cannot be determined with precision. Changes in assumptions could affect the estimates.

**Table of Contents****21. Fair value measurements**

ASC820, Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures defines that fair value is the price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. ASC 820 establishes a three-level fair value hierarchy that prioritizes the inputs used to measure fair value. The three levels of inputs used to measure fair value are as follows:

- Level 1** Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities
- Level 2** Inputs other than quoted prices included within Level 1 that are observable for the assets or liabilities, either directly or indirectly
- Level 3** Unobservable inputs for the assets or liabilities

**Assets and liabilities that are measured at fair value on a recurring basis**

The fair value hierarchy levels of assets and liabilities that are measured at fair value on a recurring basis at March 31, 2013 and 2012 are as follows:

At March 31, 2013	Millions of yen			Total
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	
<b>Assets</b>				
Investment securities available for sale				
Manufacturing industry	¥ 28,061	¥	¥	¥ 28,061
Financial service industry	19,299			19,299
Other	3,594			3,594
<b>Derivatives</b>				
Forward contracts		507		507
Option contracts				
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements		332		332
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 50,954</b>	<b>¥ 839</b>	<b>¥</b>	<b>¥ 51,793</b>
<b>Liabilities</b>				
<b>Derivatives</b>				
Forward contracts	¥	¥ 10,023	¥	¥ 10,023
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements		2,126		2,126
Other		76,239	639	76,878
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥</b>	<b>¥ 88,388</b>	<b>¥ 639</b>	<b>¥ 89,027</b>

At March 31, 2012	Millions of yen			Total
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	
<b>Assets</b>				
Investment securities available for sale				
Manufacturing industry	¥ 27,172	¥	¥	¥ 27,172
Financial service industry	16,166			16,166
Other	2,595			2,595
<b>Derivatives</b>				
Forward contracts		2,250		2,250
Option contracts		5		5
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements		1,590		1,590

Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Total	¥ 45,933	¥ 3,845	¥	¥ 49,778
<b>Liabilities</b>				
<b>Derivatives</b>				
Forward contracts	¥	¥ 8,543	¥	¥ 8,543
Interest rate swaps, cross-currency swaps and interest rate cap agreements		1,177		1,177
Other		53,103	752	53,855
Total	¥	¥ 62,823	¥ 752	¥ 63,575

F-57

**Table of Contents****Investment securities available for sale**

Marketable equity securities are classified in Level 1 in the fair value hierarchy. Marketable equity securities are measured using a market approach based on the quoted market prices in active markets.

**Derivatives (Notes 19 and 20)**

Derivatives primarily represent foreign exchange contracts and interest rate swap agreements. The fair value of foreign exchange contracts is based on a valuation model that discounts cash flows resulting from the differential between contract rate and the market-based forward rate and is classified in Level 2 in the fair value hierarchy. The fair value of interest rate swap agreements is based on a valuation model that discounts cash flows based on the terms of the contract and the swap curves and is classified in Level 2 in the fair value hierarchy.

**Other**

Other primarily represents loans which are measured at fair value under the Fair Value Option of ASC 825, Financial Instruments. The fair value of loans is based on a valuation model based on market yield curve data and credit spread data and is classified in Level 2 in the fair value hierarchy. The credit spread data was obtained through use of credit default swaps for each counterparty.

The following table summarizes information about changes of Level 3 for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011:

	Millions of yen		
	2013	2012	2011
Balance, beginning of year	¥ (752)	¥ (859)	¥ (2,280)
Total gains or losses (realized / unrealized)	113	107	219
Included in earnings	190	93	6
Included in other comprehensive income (loss)	(77)	14	213
Total purchases, issuances and settlements			1,202
Purchases			
Issuances			
Settlements			1,202
Balance, end of period	¥ (639)	¥ (752)	¥ (859)

The amount of unrealized gains on classified in Level 3 liabilities recognized in earnings for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 related to liabilities still held at March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011 were gains of ¥190 million, ¥93 million and ¥6 million, respectively. These gains were reported in other expense, net of the consolidated statements of income.

**Assets and liabilities that are measured at fair value on a non-recurring basis**

Komatsu measured certain other investment securities at cost at fair value by using various evaluation models based on inputs that are unobservable in the market such as cash flow projection, which are classified as Level 3 in the fair value hierarchy. As of March 31, 2013, an other investment security at cost was written down from their book value of ¥4,411 million to its fair value of ¥425 million estimated from its cash flow projection, and Komatsu recognized impairment losses of ¥3,986 million for the years ended March 31, 2013, which are reported in other expenses, net of the consolidated statements of income.

**Table of Contents****22. Business Segment and Geographic Information**

Komatsu has two operating segments: 1) Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment, and 2) Industrial Machinery and Others.

The accounting policies used by the segments are the same as those used in the preparation of the consolidated financial statements.

Segment profit is determined by subtracting the cost of sales and selling, general and administrative expenses from net sales attributed to the operating segment. Segment profit excludes certain general corporate administration and finance expenses, such as costs of executive management, corporate development, corporate finance, human resources, internal audit, investor relations, legal and public relations. Segment profit also excludes certain charges which may otherwise relate to operating segments, including impairments of long lived assets and goodwill.

The following tables present financial information regarding Komatsu's operating segments and geographic information at March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, and for the years then ended:

**Operating segments:**

	2013	Millions of yen 2012	2011
<b>Net sales:</b>			
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment			
External customers	¥ 1,677,049	¥ 1,739,348	¥ 1,615,689
Intersegment	2,530	4,925	2,392
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,679,579</b>	1,744,273	1,618,081
Industrial Machinery and Others			
External customers	207,942	242,415	227,438
Intersegment	8,349	8,724	10,916
<b>Total</b>	<b>216,291</b>	251,139	238,354
Elimination	(10,879)	(13,649)	(13,308)
<b>Consolidated</b>	<b>¥ 1,884,991</b>	¥ 1,981,763	¥ 1,843,127
<b>Segment profit:</b>			
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	¥ 208,951	¥ 246,291	¥ 220,830
Industrial Machinery and Others	6,222	16,779	20,965
<b>Total segment profit</b>	<b>215,173</b>	263,070	241,795
Corporate expenses and elimination	(1,161)	(4,407)	(6,823)
<b>Total</b>	<b>214,012</b>	258,663	234,972
Impairment loss on long-lived assets	1,907	3,106	5,142
Other operating income (expenses), net	(503)	786	(6,901)
<b>Operating income</b>	<b>211,602</b>	256,343	222,929
Interest and dividend income	4,277	3,776	4,493
Interest expense	(8,236)	(7,784)	(6,475)
Other, net	(3,040)	(2,726)	(1,138)
<b>Consolidated income before income taxes and equity in earnings of affiliated companies</b>	<b>¥ 204,603</b>	¥ 249,609	¥ 219,809
<b>Segment assets:</b>			
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	¥ 2,195,232	¥ 1,965,406	¥ 1,859,004
Industrial Machinery and Others	282,342	278,232	270,736



Edgar Filing: KOMATSU LTD - Form 20-F

Corporate assets and elimination		<b>40,283</b>	76,891	19,397
<b>Consolidated</b>		<b>¥ 2,517,857</b>	¥ 2,320,529	¥ 2,149,137
<b>Depreciation and amortization:</b>				
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment		¥ 78,589	¥ 80,521	¥ 80,780
Industrial Machinery and Others		9,416	8,494	7,662
<b>Consolidated</b>		<b>¥ 88,005</b>	¥ 89,015	¥ 88,442
<b>Capital investment:</b>				
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment		¥ 127,706	¥ 115,518	¥ 92,049
Industrial Machinery and Others		9,256	6,520	5,689
<b>Consolidated</b>		<b>¥ 136,962</b>	¥ 122,038	¥ 97,738

F-59

**Table of Contents**

Business categories and principal products and services included in each operating segment are as follows:

a) Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment:

Excavating equipment, loading equipment, grading and roadbed preparation equipment, hauling equipment, forestry equipment, tunneling machines, recycling equipment, industrial vehicles, other equipment, engines and components, casting products and logistics

b) Industrial Machinery and Others:

Metal forging and stamping presses, sheet-metal machines, machine tools, defense systems, temperature-control equipment and others

Transfers between segments are made at estimated arm's length prices.

Segment assets are those assets used in the operations of each segment. Unallocated corporate assets consist primarily of cash and cash equivalents and marketable investment securities maintained for general corporate purposes.

Amortization for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, does not include amortization of long-term prepaid expenses of ¥1,317 million, ¥1,091 million and ¥1,025 million. The term "Capital investment" should be distinguished from the term "Capital expenditures" as used in the consolidated statements of cash flows. The term "Capital investment" is defined to refer to the acquisition of property, plant and equipment including properties under capital leases on an accrual basis which reflects the effects of timing differences between acquisition dates and payment dates.

Impairment loss on long-lived assets and goodwill recorded in each segment asset for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, are as follows:

	Millions of yen		
	2013	2012	2011
Construction, Mining and Utility Equipment	¥ 1,153	¥ 2,330	¥ 4,969
Industrial Machinery and Others	754	776	173
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 1,907</b>	<b>¥ 3,106</b>	<b>¥ 5,142</b>

**Table of Contents****Geographic information:**

Net sales determined by customer location for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, are as follows:

	2013	Millions of yen	
		2012	2011
Japan	¥ 380,024	¥ 402,505	¥ 349,184
The Americas	561,962	460,814	397,427
Europe and CIS	203,878	207,848	165,418
China	156,030	270,017	428,208
Asia (excluding Japan and China) and Oceania	454,394	513,575	398,366
Middle East and Africa	128,703	127,004	104,524
<b>Consolidated net sales</b>	<b>¥ 1,884,991</b>	<b>¥ 1,981,763</b>	<b>¥ 1,843,127</b>

Net sales determined by geographic origin for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, and property, plant and equipment determined based on physical location at March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, are as follows:

	2013	Millions of yen	
		2012	2011
<b>Net sales:</b>			
Japan	¥ 622,121	¥ 723,568	¥ 641,502
U.S.A.	534,781	436,300	391,380
Europe and CIS	203,668	217,085	175,217
China	122,373	196,537	332,581
Others	402,048	408,273	302,447
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 1,884,991</b>	<b>¥ 1,981,763</b>	<b>¥ 1,843,127</b>
<b>Property, plant and equipment:</b>			
Japan	¥ 367,610	¥ 356,424	¥ 354,797
U.S.A.	85,499	67,350	63,972
Europe and CIS	32,015	29,483	29,868
Others	100,096	76,399	59,750
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 585,220</b>	<b>¥ 529,656</b>	<b>¥ 508,387</b>

No individual country within Europe and CIS or Others had a material impact on net sales.

There were no sales to a single major external customer for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011.

**Table of Contents****23. Supplementary Information to Balance Sheets**

At March 31, 2013 and 2012, deferred income taxes and other current assets were comprised of the following:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Prepaid expenses	¥ 8,923	¥ 8,601
Short-term loans receivable:		
Affiliated companies	565	664
Other	33	1,144
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 598</b>	<b>¥ 1,808</b>
Deferred income taxes	55,591	44,825
Other	92,556	89,044
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 157,668</b>	<b>¥ 144,278</b>

At March 31, 2013 and 2012, deferred income taxes and other current liabilities were comprised of the following:

	Millions of yen	
	2013	2012
Accrued expenses	¥ 96,815	¥ 84,264
Advances received	32,324	49,180
Deferred income taxes	507	687
Other	102,479	97,643
<b>Total</b>	<b>¥ 232,125</b>	<b>¥ 231,774</b>

**Table of Contents****24. Supplementary Information to Statements of Income**

The following information shows research and development expenses and advertising costs, for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011. Research and development expenses and advertising costs are charged to expense as incurred and are included in cost of sales and selling, general and administrative expenses in consolidated statements of income.

	Millions of yen		
	2013	2012	2011
Research and development expenses	¥ 60,788	¥ 54,843	¥ 49,005
Advertising costs	2,452	2,357	2,627

Shipping and handling costs included in selling, general and administrative expenses for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, were as follows:

	Millions of yen		
	2013	2012	2011
Shipping and handling costs	¥ 41,849	¥ 45,231	¥ 37,706

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, Komatsu recognized an impairment loss of ¥1,907 million, ¥3,106 million and ¥5,142, million related to property, plant and equipment and intangible assets subject to amortization at the Company and certain subsidiaries, as profitability of the assets of each subsidiary was expected to be low in the future and Komatsu estimated the carrying amounts would not be recovered by the future cash flows.

Other operating income (expenses), net for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, were comprised of the following:

	Millions of yen		
	2013	2012	2011
Gain on sale of property	¥ 764	¥ 1,294	¥ 2,432
Loss on disposal or sale of fixed assets*	(2,064)	(2,487)	(1,553)
Other*	797	1,979	(7,780)
Total	¥ (503)	¥ 786	¥ (6,901)

\* For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011, Loss on disposal or sale of fixed assets and Other included losses of ¥73 million, ¥2,787 million respectively resulted from the Great East Japan Earthquake.

For the fiscal year ended March 31, 2011, the Company and certain subsidiaries recognized expenses associated with structural reforms of production and sales operations. Out of the expenses, reorganization costs of ¥3,771 million, such as wind down and relocation costs related to the integration of facilities were included in other, except the expenses included in impairment loss on long-lived assets of the consolidated statements of income.

**Table of Contents**

Other expenses, net for the years ended March 31, 2013, 2012 and 2011, were comprised of the following:

	2013	Millions of yen 2012	2011
Interest income			
Installment receivables	¥ 329	¥ 289	¥ 503
Other	2,732	2,632	2,670
Dividends	1,216	855	1,320
Interest expense	(8,236)	(7,784)	(6,475)
Impairment loss and net gain (loss) from sale of investment securities	(3,058)	(2,516)	(54)
Exchange gain (loss), net	1,214	3,864	(4,193)
Other	(1,196)	(4,074)	3,109
<b>Total</b>	<b>(¥6,999)</b>	<b>¥ (6,734)</b>	<b>¥ (3,120)</b>

F-64

**Table of Contents****25. Valuation and Qualifying Accounts**

Valuation and qualifying accounts deducted from assets to which they apply:

	2013	Millions of yen 2012	2011
Allowance for doubtful receivables			
Balance at beginning of fiscal period	¥ 15,243	¥ 15,793	¥ 14,941
Additions			
Charged to costs and expenses	3,050	2,105	5,307
Charged to other accounts	118	255	1,068
Deductions	417	2,910	5,523
Balance at end of fiscal period	¥ 17,994	¥ 15,243	¥ 15,793

Deductions were principally collectible or uncollectible accounts and notes charged to the allowance.

	2013	Millions of yen 2012	2011
Valuation allowance for deferred tax assets			
Balance at beginning of fiscal period	¥ 20,730	¥ 36,690	¥ 49,081
Additions			
Charged to costs and expenses	4,423	1,961	7,596
Charged to other accounts	1,729	276	
Deductions	1,867	18,197	19,987
Balance at end of fiscal period	¥ 25,015	¥ 20,730	¥ 36,690

Deductions were principally realization or expiration of net operating loss carryforwards.

**Table of Contents****EXHIBIT INDEX**

Exhibit number	Title	Subsequently Numbered Page
Exhibit (1.1)	Articles of Incorporation of Komatsu Ltd., as amended (Translation)	1
Exhibit (1.2)	Regulations of The Board of Directors (Translation)	7
Exhibit (2)	Share Handling Regulations, as amended (Translation)	9
Exhibit (8)	Significant subsidiaries of Komatsu Ltd. including additional subsidiaries that management has deemed to be significant, as of March 31, 2012 (See Item 4. Information on the Company C. Organizational Structure )	
Exhibit (11)	Code of Ethics for Senior Officers (Translation)	13
Exhibit (12) a.	Certification of the CEO of the Company required pursuant to Rule 15d-14(a)	17
Exhibit (12) b.	Certification of the CFO of the Company required pursuant to Rule 15d-14(a)	18
Exhibit (13) a.	Certification of the CEO of the Company required pursuant to Rule 15d-14(b) and Section 1350 of Chapter 63 of Title 18 of The United States Code	19
Exhibit (13) b.	Certification of the CFO of the Company required pursuant to Rule 15d-14(b) and Section 1350 of Chapter 63 of Title 18 of The United States Code	20
Exhibit 101	Instance Document	
Exhibit 101	Schema Document	
Exhibit 101	Calculation Linkbase Document	
Exhibit 101	Definition Linkbase Document	
Exhibit 101	Labels Linkbase Document	
Exhibit 101	Presentation Linkbase Document	